UNITED STAT	es Patent and Trademai	RK OFFICE UNITED STA' United States PO. Box 1 Advandir www.uspic	TES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE Patent and Trademark Office SSIONER FOR PATENTS 450 a, 'tiggina 22313-1450 _{SBV}	
APPLICATION NUMBER	PATENT NUMBER	GROUP ART UNIT	FILE WRAPPER LOCATION	
09/967,140	7039435	2618	9200	

Correspondence Address/Fee Address Change

The following fields have been set to Customer Number 24319 on 07/28/2014 • Correspondence Address

- Maintenance Fee Address

The address of record for Customer Number 24319 is:

24319 LSI CORPORATION 1110 American Parkway NE Allentown, PA 18109

> PART 1 - ATTORNEY/APPLICANT COPY page 1 of 1



Correspondence Address/Fee Address Change

The following fields have been set to Customer Number 24319 on 07/25/2014

Correspondence Address

Maintenance Fee Address

The address of record for Customer Number 24319 is:

24319 LSI CORPORATION 1110 American Parkway NE Allentown, PA 18109

> PART 1 - ATTORNEY/APPLICANT COPY page 1 of 1

FEB	2 8 2005	this form, together wi	th applicable fe	ee(s), to: <u>Ma</u> or <u>Fa</u>	ill Mail Stop ISSU Commissioner P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Vin (571) 273-2885	IE FEE for Patents rginia 22313-1450	
ar ar	STRUCTIONS: This to opropriate of further con reconcerned by the second	rm should be used for tran rrespondence including the below or directed otherwise ns.	Patent, advance ord in Block 1, by (a)	E FEE and PU ders and notific) specifying a n	ballCATION FEE (if rec cation of maintenance fees new correspondence addres	will be mailed to the current s; and/or (b) indicating a sep	arate "FEE ADDRESS"
	CURRENT CORRESPONDENC 47396 7:	CE ADDRESS (Note: Use Block I for 590 11/18/2005	any change of address)		Note: A certificate Fee(s) Transmittal. 1 papers. Each additio have its own certific:	of mailing can only be used f This certificate cannot be used nal paper, such as an assignm ate of mailing or transmission.	for domestic mailings of for any other accompan- ent or formal drawing, r
	HITT GAINES, 1 AGERE SYSTEM PO BOX 832570 RICHARDSON, T	PC IS INC. TX 75083			I hereby certify that States Postal Service addressed to the M transmitted to the US	ertificate of Mailing or Tran this Fee(s) Transmittal is bein with sufficient postage for fi ail Stop ISSUE FEE address SPTO (571) 273-2885, on the	smission ng deposited with the Un rst class mail in an enve s above, or being facsin date indicated below.
)3/01	/2006 CCHAU2 0000	0023 09967140			Debbie	Sams	(Depositor's na
	:1501	1400.00 DP			Fobrus	ry 21 2006	(31g)a
53 FC	:1504	300.00 DP				11 y 21, 2000	
L	APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	F	FIRST NAMED I	NVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
ті	TLE OF INVENTION: P	ROXIMITY REGULATION	SYSTEM FOR US	SE WITH A PO	ORTABLE CELL PHONE	AND A METHOD OF OPERA	ATION THEREOF
Г	APPLN, TYPE	SMALL ENTITY	ISSUE FE	EE	PUBLICATION FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
_	nonprovisional	NO	\$1400)	\$300	\$1700	02/21/2006
Г	EXAN	MINER	ART UNI	IT	CLASS-SUBCLASS	7	
	TRINH,	SONNY	2687		455-522000		
÷.	Address form PTO/SB/T	22) attached. tion (or "Fee Address" Indic.	ation form	(2) the name registered att	of a single firm (having as	a member a 2	
. 3.	TO SEA Address "indica PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 Number is required. ASSIGNEE NAME ANE PLEASE NOTE: Unless recordation as set forth in (A) NAME OF ASSIGN	or more recent) attached. Us D RESIDENCE DATA TO E s an assignee is identified b n 37 CFR 3.11. Completion IEE	e of a Customer E PRINTED ON T elow, no assignee d of this form is NOT (B)	2 registered p listed, no nan HE PATENT (p data will appear f a substitute for) RESIDENCE:	print or type) r on the patent. If an assignment. : (CITY and STATE OR CO	mes of up to If no name is 3 gnee is identified below, the o DUNTRY)	document has been filed
•	"Fee Address" indica PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 Number is required. ASSIGNEE NAME ANE PLEASE NOTE: Unless recordation as set forth in (A) NAME OF ASSIGN Agere Sys	or more recent) attached. Us D RESIDENCE DATA TO E s an assignee is identified b n 37 CFR 3.11. Completion IEE tems Inc.	e of a Customer HE PRINTED ON T elow, no assignee c of this form is NOT (B)	2 registered p listed, no nan HE PATENT (p data will appear f a substitute for) RESIDENCE: Allen	print or type) r on the patent. If an assignment. c (CITY and STATE OR CO town, PA	gnee is identified below, the o	document has been filed
- <u>-</u> .	"Fee Address" indica PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 Number is required. ASSIGNEE NAME AND PLEASE NOTE: Unless recordation as set forth in (A) NAME OF ASSIGN Agere Sys ease check the appropriate	or more recent) attached. Us RESIDENCE DATA TO B s an assignee is identified b n 37 CFR 3.11. Completion IEE tems Inc. e assignee category or category	e of a Customer E PRINTED ON T elow, no assignee d of this form is NOT (B) vries (will not be prin	2 registered p listed, no nan THE PATENT (p data will appear a substitute for) RESIDENCE: Allen inted on the pate	torney of agent and the hash new will be printed. print or type) r on the patent. If an assign filing an assignment. : (CITY and STATE OR CO town, PA ent): Individual X	mes of up to If no name is 3 gnee is identified below, the o DUNTRY) Corporation or other private gr	document has been filed
	Assigned Address" indica PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 Number is required. ASSIGNEE NAME AND PLEASE NOTE: Unless recordation as set forth ir (A) NAME OF ASSIGN Agere Sys ease check the appropriate . The following fee(s) are DI Issue Fee	or more recent) attached. Us D RESIDENCE DATA TO E s an assignee is identified b n 37 CFR 3.11. Completion IEE tems Inc. e assignee category or categor enclosed:	e of a Customer IE PRINTED ON T elow, no assignee d of this form is NOT (B) wries (will not be prin 4b.	2 registered j listed, no nan HE PATENT (data will appear a substitute for) RESIDENCE: Allen inted on the pate . Payment of Fe	torney of agent and the hards print or type) r on the patent. If an assignment. : (CITY and STATE OR Co town, PA ent): Individual X e(s):	gnee is identified below, the of DUNTRY)	document has been filed
$\frac{Ph}{4a}$	The following fcc(s) are Agere Sys ease check the appropriate The following fcc(s) are Description for the following fcc are Description for the following for the follow	or more recent) attached. Us D RESIDENCE DATA TO E s an assignee is identified b n 37 CFR 3.11. Completion IEE COMPS Inc. e assignee category or categor enclosed: small entity discount permitt	e of a Customer IE PRINTED ON T elow, no assignee d of this form is NOT (B) rries (will not be prin 4b.	2 registered listed, no nan HE PATENT (g data will appear f a substitute for) RESIDENCE: Allen Payment of Fe A check in t Payment by	torney of agent and the hard print or type) r on the patent. If an assigned r filing an assignment. (CITY and STATE OR Co town, PA ent): Individual re(s): the amount of the fee(s) is a recedit card. Form PTO-20	mes of up to If no name is <u>3</u> gnee is identified below, the o DUNTRY) Corporation or other private gr enclosed. 38 is attached.	document has been filed
$\frac{1}{3}$	Agere Sys assection for the second second Advance Order - # of the second Advance Order - # of	or more recent) attached. Us D RESIDENCE DATA TO E s an assignee is identified b n 37 CFR 3.11. Completion IEE tems Inc. e assignee category or categor enclosed: small entity discount permitto f Copies1	e of a Customer IE PRINTED ON T elow, no assignee d of this form is NOT (B) rries (will not be prin 4b.	2 registered listed, no nan HE PATENT (g data will appear r a substitute for) RESIDENCE: Allen Payment of Fe SIA check in t Payment by D The Direct	toriney of agent and the hash ne will be printed. print or type) r on the patent. If an assignment. c (CITY and STATE OR CO town, PA ent): Individual X re(s): the amount of the fee(s) is a credit card. Form PTO-20 or is hereby authorized by n Number	mes of up to If no name is 3 gnee is identified below, the of DUNTRY) Corporation or other private gr enclosed. 38 is attached. charge the required fee(s), or cences an extra of	document has been filed
$\frac{1}{3}$	"Fee Address" indica PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 Number is required. ASSIGNEE NAME AND PLEASE NOTE: Unless recordation as set forth ir (A) NAME OF ASSIGN Agere Sys ease check the appropriate Issue Fee Publication Fee (No s Advance Order - # of Change in Entity Status	or more recent) attached. Us CRESIDENCE DATA TO E s an assignee is identified b n 37 CFR 3.11. Completion TEE CLEMENTINC. e assignee category or categor enclosed: small entity discount permitte f Copies1 (from status indicated above	e of a Customer IE PRINTED ON T elow, no assignee d of this form is NOT (B) wries (will not be prin 4b, ed) 	2 registered listed, no nam HE PATENT (p data will appear a substitute for) RESIDENCE: Allen Payment of Fe A check in t Payment of Fe Cayment of Fe Deposit Account	torney of agent and the hash me will be printed. print or type) r on the patent. If an assign filing an assignment. t (CITY and STATE OR CO town, PA ent): Individual to te(s): the amount of the fee(s) is to c credit card. Form PTO-20 or is hereby authorized by nt Number	mes of up to If no name is 3 gnee is identified below, the of DUNTRY) Corporation or other private gr enclosed. 38 is attached. charge the required fee(s), or (enclose an extra of	document has been filed
$\frac{P}{4a}$	a "Fee Address" indica PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 Number is required. ASSIGNEE NAME AND PLEASE NOTE: Unless recordation as set forth ir (A) NAME OF ASSIGN Agere Sys ease check the appropriate . The following fee(s) are I lssue Fee I sublication Fee (No s I Advance Order - # of Change in Entity Status a. Applicant claims S	or more recent) attached. Us PRESIDENCE DATA TO E an assignee is identified b n 37 CFR 3.11. Completion IEE CEENS Inc. e assignee category or categor enclosed: small entity discount permitt f Copies 1 (from status indicated above MALL ENTITY status. See	e of a Customer IE PRINTED ON T IE PRINTED ON T (B) ories (will not be print 4b. ed) 	2 registered 1 listed, no nam HE PATENT (f data will appear a substitute for) RESIDENCE: Allen Payment of Fe QIA check in t Deposit Account b. Applican	t is no longer claiming SM	mes of up to If no name is <u>3</u> gnee is identified below, the of DUNTRY) Corporation or other private gr enclosed. 38 is attached. charge the required fee(s), or (enclose an extra of ALL ENTITY status. See 37 C	document has been filed roup entity D Governm credit any overpayment copy of this form).
Ph 	The control of the set of th	or more recent) attached. Us D RESIDENCE DATA TO E s an assignee is identified b n 37 CFR 3.11. Completion IEE CEENS Inc. e assignee category or categor enclosed: small entity discount permitt f Copies1 (from status indicated above MALL ENTITY status. See is requested to apply the Iss is requested to apply the Iss is required) in fee (if required) ords of the United States Pat	e of a Customer IE PRINTED ON T IE PRINTED ON T (B) wries (will not be print 4b. ed) 37 CFR 1.27. If Fee and Publicati will not be accepted ent and Trademark (2 registered listed, no nam HE PATENT (f data will appear a substitute for) RESIDENCE: Allen inted on the pate Payment of Fe Dayment by Data Check in t Payment by Data Check in t Deposit Account ion Fee (if any) (from anyone of Office.	t is no longer claiming SM or to re-apply any previou the the the the the the the the the the	mes of up to If no name is 3 gnee is identified below, the of DUNTRY) Corporation or other private gr enclosed. 38 is attached. charge the required fee(s), or (enclose an extra of ALL ENTITY status. See 37 C sly paid issue fee to the applic gistered attorney or agent; or t	document has been filed roup entity D Governm coredit any overpayment copy of this form). CFR 1.27(g)(2). ation identified above. he assignee or other part
$\frac{Pl}{4a}$	□ "Fee Address" indica PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 Number is required. ASSIGNEE NAME AND PLEASE NOTE: Unless recordation as set forth ir (A) NAME OF ASSIGN Agere Sys ease check the appropriate I field a system of the appropriate Advance Order - # of Change in Entity Status a Applicant claims S the Director of the USPTO OTE: The Issue Fee and Py DTE: The Issue Fee and Py Authorized Signature _	or more recent) attached. Us RESIDENCE DATA TO E s an assignee is identified b n 37 CFR 3.11. Completion IEE Composition Completion Composition Completion Composition Composition C	e of a Customer lee PRINTED ON T elow, no assignee d of this form is NOT (B) wries (will not be prin 4b. ed) 37 CFR 1.27. ue Fee and Publicati will not be accepted ent and Trademark (2 registered listed, no nan HE PATENT (cf data will appear a substitute for) RESIDENCE: Allen Payment of Fe A check in t Payment of Fe A check in t Deposit Accour b. Applican ion Fee (if any) from anyone of Office.	t is no longer claiming SM or to re-apply any previou that the antice series of the se	mes of up to If no name is 3 gnee is identified below, the of DUNTRY) Corporation or other private gr enclosed. 38 is attached. charge the required fee(s), or (enclose an extra of ALL ENTITY status. See 37 C sly paid issue fee to the applic gistered attorney or agent; or t February 21	document has been filed roup entity Governm credit any overpayment copy of this form). CFR 1.27(g)(2). ation identified above. he assignee or other part , 2006
→ → → → → → → → → → → → → →	□ "Fee Address" indica PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 Number is required. ASSIGNEE NAME AND PLEASE NOTE: Unless recordation as set forth ir (A) NAME OF ASSIGN Agere Sys ease check the appropriate . The following fee(s) are Issue Fee Issue Fee Issue Fee Advance Order - # of Change in Entity Status □ a. Applicant claims S te Director of the USPTO OTE: The Issue Fee and P terest as shown by the record Authorized Signature	or more recent) attached. Us RESIDENCE DATA TO E an assignee is identified b n 37 CFR 3.11. Completion IEE teens Inc. e assignee category or categor enclosed: small entity discount permitt f Copies 1 (from status indicated above MALL ENTITY status. See is requested to apply the Iss is requested to apply t	e of a Customer IE PRINTED ON T IE PRINTED ON T (B) of this form is NOT (B) vries (will not be print 4b. ed) 37 CFR 1.27. In Fee and Publication ST CFR 1.27. In Fee and Publication St LISS	2 registered 1 listed, no nam HE PATENT (i data will appear a substitute for) RESIDENCE: Allen Payment of Fe @A check in t Deposit Account b. Applicant ion Fee (if any) from anyone of Office.	t is no longer claiming SM or to re-apply any previou ther than the applicant; a re- print or type) r on the patent. If an assign r filing an assignment. (CITY and STATE OR CO town, PA ent): Individual re- predict card. Form PTO-20 or is hereby authorized by nt Number	mes of up to If no name is 3 gnee is identified below, the of DUNTRY) Corporation or other private gr enclosed. 38 is attached. charge the required fee(s), or (enclose an extra of ALL ENTITY status. See 37 C sly paid issue fee to the applic gistered attorney or agent; or t February 21 on No48,981	document has been filed roup entity D Governm coredit any overpayment copy of this form). CFR 1.27(g)(2). ation identified above. he assignee or other part 2006

OMB 0651-0033 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE United States Patent and Trademark Office Address COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS P.O. Box 1450 Atexandria, Vrigninia 22313-1450 www.uspto.gov

NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE AND FEE(S) DUE

 47396
 7590
 11/18/2005

 HITT GAINES, PC
 TRINH, SONNY

 AGERE SYSTEMS INC.
 ART UNIT

 PO BOX 832570
 ART UNIT

 RICHARDSON, TX 75083
 2687

 DATE MAILED: 11/18/2005

APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
09/967,140	09/28/2001	Richard L. McDowell	R.L. MCDOWELL 20-76	4925

TITLE OF INVENTION: PROXIMITY REGULATION SYSTEM FOR USE WITH A PORTABLE CELL PHONE AND A METHOD OF OPERATION THEREOF

APPLN. TYPE	SMALL ENTITY	ISSUE FEE	PUBLICATION FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUE
nonprovisional	NO	\$1400	\$300	\$1700	02/21/2006

THE APPLICATION IDENTIFIED ABOVE HAS BEEN EXAMINED AND IS ALLOWED FOR ISSUANCE AS A PATENT. <u>PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS CLOSED</u>. THIS NOTICE OF ALLOWANCE IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT RIGHTS. THIS APPLICATION IS SUBJECT TO WITHDRAWAL FROM ISSUE AT THE INITIATIVE OF THE OFFICE OR UPON PETITION BY THE APPLICANT. SEE 37 CFR 1.313 AND MPEP 1308.

THE ISSUE FEE AND PUBLICATION FEE (IF REQUIRED) MUST BE PAID WITHIN <u>THREE MONTHS</u> FROM THE MAILING DATE OF THIS NOTICE OR THIS APPLICATION SHALL BE REGARDED AS ABANDONED. <u>THIS STATUTORY PERIOD CANNOT BE EXTENDED</u>. SEE 35 U.S.C. 151. THE ISSUE FEE DUE INDICATED ABOVE REFLECTS A CREDIT FOR ANY PREVIOUSLY PAID ISSUE FEE APPLIED IN THIS APPLICATION. THE PTOL-85B (OR AN EQUIVALENT) MUST BE RETURNED WITHIN THIS PERIOD EVEN IF NO FEE IS DUE OR THE APPLICATION WILL BE REGARDED AS ABANDONED.

HOW TO REPLY TO THIS NOTICE:

I. Review the SMALL ENTITY status shown above.

If the SMALL ENTITY is shown as YES, verify your current SMALL ENTITY status:	If the SMALL ENTITY is shown as NO:
A. If the status is the same, pay the TOTAL FEE(S) DUE shown above.	A. Pay TOTAL FEE(S) DUE shown above, or
B. If the status above is to be removed, check box 5b on Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal and pay the PUBLICATION FEE (if required) and twice the amount of the ISSUE FEE shown above, or	B. If applicant claimed SMALL ENTITY status before, or is now claiming SMALL ENTITY status, check box 5a on Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal and pay the PUBLICATION FEE (if required) and 1/2 the ISSUE FEE shown above.

II. PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL should be completed and returned to the United States Patent and Trademark Office (USPTO) with your ISSUE FEE and PUBLICATION FEE (if required). Even if the fee(s) have already been paid, Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal should be completed and returned. If you are charging the fee(s) to your deposit account, section "4b" of Part B - Fee(s) Transmittal should be completed and an extra copy of the form should be submitted.

III. All communications regarding this application must give the application number. Please direct all communications prior to issuance to Mail Stop ISSUE FEE unless advised to the contrary.

IMPORTANT REMINDER: Utility patents issuing on applications filed on or after Dec. 12, 1980 may require payment of maintenance fees. It is patentee's responsibility to ensure timely payment of maintenance fees when due.

Page 1 of 3

PTOL-85 (Rev. 07/05) Approved for use through 04/30/2007.

PART B - FEE(S) TRANSMITTAL

Complete and send this form, together wi	th applicable lee(s), to: <u>r</u>	Mail Stop ISSC Commissioner P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Vii Fax (571) 273-2885	for Patents rginia 22313-1450	
INSTRUCTIONS: This form should be used for tra appropriate. All further correspondence including the indicated unless corrected below or directed otherwis maintenance fee notifications.	nsmitting the ISSUE FEE and Patent, advance orders and not e in Block 1, by (a) specifying	PUBLICATION FEE (if rec ification of maintenance fees a new correspondence addres	uired). Blocks 1 through 5 si will be mailed to the current ss; and/or (b) indicating a sepa	hould be completed where correspondence address as arate "FEE ADDRESS" for
CURRENT CORRESPONDENCE ADDRESS (Note: Use Block I for	r any change of address)	Note: A certificate	of mailing can only be used for	or domestic mailings of the
		papers. Each additio	nal paper, such as an assignme	ent or formal drawing, must
47396 7590 11/18/2005		have its own certific	ate of mailing or transmission.	
AGERE SYSTEMS INC. PO BOX 832570 RICHARDSON, TX 75083		I hereby certify the States Postal Service addressed to the M transmitted to the US	ertificate of Mailing or Trans this Fee(s) Transmittal is bein with sufficient postage for fir ail Stop ISSUE FEE address SPTO (571) 273-2885, on the d	mission g deposited with the United st class mail in an envelope above, or being facsimile late indicated below.
				(Depositor's name)
				(Signature)
				(Date)
APPLICATION NO. FILING DATE	FIRST NAME	D INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
09/967,140 09/28/2001	Richard L.	McDowell	R.L. MCDOWELL 20-76	4925
	N SYSTEM FOR USE WITH A	PORTABLE CELL PHONE	AND A METHOD OF OPERA	TION THEREOF
APPLN. TYPE SMALL ENTITY	ISSUE FEE	PUBLICATION FEE	TOTAL FEE(S) DUE	DATE DUÉ
nonprovisional NO	\$1400	\$300	\$1700	02/21/2006
EXAMINER	ART UNIT	CLASS-SUBCLASS		
TRINH, SONNY	2687	455-522000		
Change of correspondence address or indication of "I CFR 1.363). Change of correspondence address (or Change of Address form PTO/SB/122) attached. "Fee Address" indication (or "Fee Address" Indic PTO/SB/47; Rev 03-02 or more recent) attached. U: Number is required.	Correspondence 2. For prin Correspondence (1) the na station form contact of a Customer (2) the na registered 2 registered 2 registered (2) the na registe	nting on the patent front page, mes of up to 3 registered pat OR, alternatively, me of a single firm (having au attorney or agent) and the na ed patent attorneys or agents. name will be printed.	list ent attorneys ¹ s a member a ² mes of up to If no name is 3	
 ASSIGNEE NAME AND RESIDENCE DATA TO I PLEASE NOTE: Unless an assignee is identified b recordation as set forth in 37 CFR 3.11. Completion (A) NAME OF ASSIGNEE 	BE PRINTED ON THE PATEN below, no assignee data will app of this form is NOT a substitute (B) RESIDENC	T (print or type) bear on the patent. If an assig for filing an assignment. CE: (CITY and STATE OR CO	gnee is identified below, the d DUNTRY)	locument has been filed for
Please check the appropriate assignee category or category	ories (will not be printed on the p	atent): 🗆 Individual 🗔	Corporation or other private gro	oup entity 🔲 Government
4a. The following fee(s) are enclosed:	4b. Payment of	Fee(s):		
Issue Fee	A check	in the amount of the fee(s) is	enclosed.	
Publication Fee (No small entity discount permitted)	ed) 🖵 Payment	by credit card. Form PTO-20	38 is attached.	
Advance Order - # of Copies	Deposit Acc	ector is hereby authorized by count Number	charge the required fee(s), or (enclose an extra c	opy of this form).
5. Change in Entity Status (from status indicated abov		ent is an Issuer shinsing CM	ALL PARTY dates for 27 C	ED 1 37(-)(2)
The Director of the USPTO is requested to apply the los	ue Fee and Publication Fee (if a	cant is no longer claiming SM	ALL ENTITY status. See 57 C	rk 1.2/(g)(2).
NOTE: The Issue Fee and Publication Fee (if required) interest as shown by the records of the United States Pa	will not be accepted from anyon tent and Trademark Office.	e other than the applicant; a re	gistered attorney or agent, or the	he assignee or other party in
Authorized Signature		Date		
Typed or printed name		Registratio	on No	
This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1. an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.S.G. submitting the completed application form to the USP this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, s Box 1450, Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450. DO NOT Alexandria, Virginia 22315-1450. Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no person	311. The information is required 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This co TO. Time will vary depending u hould be sent to the Chief Infor SEND FEES OR COMPLETEI s are required to respond to a col	to obtain or retain a benefit b llection is estimated to take I pon the individual case. Any mation Officer, U.S. Patent an D FORMS TO THIS ADDRE llection of information unless	y the public which is to file (and 2 minutes to complete, includir comments on the amount of ti d Trademark Office, U.S. Dep SS. SEND TO: Commissioner it displays a valid OMB control	d by the USPTO to process) ag gathering, preparing, and me you require to complete artiment of Commerce, P.O. for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, I number.

OMB 0651-0033 U.S. Patent and Trademark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE



UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

			Address: COMMISSIONER Fi P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Virginia 223 www.uspto.gov	DR PATENTS 13-1450
APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
09/967,140	09/28/2001	Richard L. McDowell	R.L. MCDOWELL 20-76	4925
47396	7590 11/18/2005		EXAM	INER
HITT GAINES,	PC		TRINH,	SONNY
AGERE SYSTEM	AS INC.		ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
RICHARDSON,	TX 75083		2687	
			DATE MAILED: 11/18/200	5

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE

Determination of Patent Term Adjustment under 35 U.S.C. 154 (b) (application filed on or after May 29, 2000)

The Patent Term Adjustment to date is 575 day(s). If the issue fee is paid on the date that is three months after the mailing date of this notice and the patent issues on the Tuesday before the date that is 28 weeks (six and a half months) after the mailing date of this notice, the Patent Term Adjustment will be 575 day(s).

If a Continued Prosecution Application (CPA) was filed in the above-identified application, the filing date that determines Patent Term Adjustment is the filing date of the most recent CPA.

Applicant will be able to obtain more detailed information by accessing the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) WEB site (http://pair.uspto.gov).

Any questions regarding the Patent Term Extension or Adjustment determination should be directed to the Office of Patent Legal Administration at (571) 272-7702. Questions relating to issue and publication fee payments should be directed to the Customer Service Center of the Office of Patent Publication at (703) 305-8283.

Page 3 of 3

PTOL-85 (Rev. 07/05) Approved for use through 04/30/2007.

	Application No.	Applicant(s)
Notice of Allowshills	09/967,140	MCDOWELL ET AL.
Nouce of Allowability	Examiner	Art Unit
	Sonny TRINH	2687
The MAILING DATE of this communication appe All claims being allowable, PROSECUTION ON THE MERITS IS herewith (or previously mailed), a Notice of Allowance (PTOL-85) NOTICE OF ALLOWABILITY IS NOT A GRANT OF PATENT R of the Office or upon petition by the applicant. See 37 CFR 1.313	ears on the cover sheet wit (OR REMAINS) CLOSED in) or other appropriate commu (GHTS. This application is s 8 and MPEP 1308.	h the correspondence address this application. If not included nication will be mailed in due course. THIS ubject to withdrawal from issue at the initia
1. This communication is responsive to <u>10/06/05</u> .		•
2. X The allowed claim(s) is/are <u>19-27</u> .		
3. The drawings filed on <u>28 September 2001</u> are accepted by	the Examiner.	
 4. Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign priority ur a) All b) Some* c) None of the: 	nder 35 U.S.C. § 119(a)-(d) c	r (f).
 Certified copies of the priority documents have 	e been received.	
2. Certified copies of the priority documents have	been received in Application	n No
3. Copies of the certified copies of the priority do	cuments have been received	in this national stage application from the
International Bureau (PCT Rule 17.2(a)).		
 Certified copies not received: 		
Applicant has THREE MONTHS FROM THE "MAILING DATE" noted below. Failure to timely comply will result in ABANDONM THIS THREE-MONTH PERIOD IS NOT EXTENDABLE.	of this communication to file IENT of this application.	a reply complying with the requirements
5. A SUBSTITUTE OATH OR DECLARATION must be subm INFORMAL PATENT APPLICATION (PTO-152) which give	itted. Note the attached EXA es reason(s) why the oath or	MINER'S AMENDMENT or NOTICE OF declaration is deficient.
6. CORRECTED DRAWINGS (as "replacement sheets") mus	t be submitted.	
(a) \square including changes required by the Notice of Draftspers	on's Patent Drawing Review	(PTO-948) attached
1) 🗋 hereto or 2) 🗌 to Paper No./Mail Date		
(b) including changes required by the attached Examiner's Paper No./Mail Date	s Amendment / Comment or	in the Office action of
ldentifying indicia such as the application number (see 37 CFR 1 each sheet. Replacement sheet(s) should be labeled as such in ti	.84(c)) should be written on th he header according to 37 CFF	e drawings in the front (not the back) of ₹ 1.121(d).
 DEPOSIT OF and/or INFORMATION about the deposit attached Examiner's comment regarding REQUIREMENT 	SIT OF BIOLOGICAL MATE	RIAL must be submitted. Note the LOGICAL MATERIAL.
••• •		
1. X Notice of References Cited (PTO-892)	5. Notice of Inf	ormal Patent Application (PTO-152)
2. Notice of Draftperson's Patent Drawing Review (PTO-948)	6. Interview Su	mmarv (PTO-413).
3. Information Disclosure Statements (PTO-1449 or PTO/SB/0	Paper No.// 8), 7. 🗌 Examiner's A	Ail Date
Paper No /Mail Date	8 🗍 Evaminaria 9	tatement of Peasons for Allowers
of Biological Material		Allowance
A	formighuls	
(S	UNINGTHINH	
(ab)		

í

Notice of References Cited					Application/Control No. 09/967,140	Applicant(s) Reexaminat MCDOWEL	Applicant(s)/Patent Under Reexamination MCDOWELL ET AL.	
					Examiner	Art Unit		Bage 1 of 1
					Sonny TRINH	2687		rayeror .
				U.S. P/	ATENT DOCUMENTS			
*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY		Name			Classification
	A	US-2005/0124305	06-2005	Stichelt	pout, Thomas			455/117
	в	US-2004/0203345	10-2004	Tehran	i, Mahin Nikmanesh			455/011.1
	с	US-2003/0064761	04-2003	Neverm	nann, Peter			455/572
	D	US-6,456,856	09-2002	Werling	ı et al.			455/575.5
	Е	US-2005/0093624	05-2005	Forrest	er et al.			330/129
	F	US-2005/0075123	04-2005	Jin et a	l			455/522
	G	US-2004/0176125	09-2004	Lee, Ju	-Byung			455/522
	н	US-2003/0076168	04-2003	Forrest	er, Tim			330/129
	Ι	US-						
	J	US-						
	к	US-						
	L	US-						
	м	US-						

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	Country	Name	Classification
	N					
	0				· ·	
	Ρ					
	Q					
	R					
	s				· · ·	
	т					

		NON-PATENT DOCUMENTS
*		Include as applicable: Author, Title Date, Publisher, Edition or Volume, Pertinent Pages)
	υ	
	v	
	w	
	x	

*A copy of this reference is not being furnished with this Office action. (See MPEP § 707.05(a).) Dates in MM-YYYY format are publication dates. Classifications may be US or foreign.

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office PTO-892 (Rev. 01-2001)

٠

Notice of References Cited

Part of Paper No. 20051031

Issue Classification			Application/Control No.		Applicant(s)/Patent under Reexamination			
			09/967 1	40				
			Examine	r		Art Unit		
			Canavit			0697		
			Sonny I	RIINH		2007		
		15	SUE C	LASSIF	ICATIC	DN .		
ORIGINA	-				CRO	SS REFEREN	CE(S)	
CLASS S	JBCLASS	CLASS		s	UBCLASS (O	NE SUBCLAS	S PER BLOCK)	
455	522	455	575.5	115.1				
INTERNATIONAL CLA	SSIFICATION							
HO4B 0	7 / 00				-			
	1							
	1							
	1							
	/							
			. /	? the	-/			
<i></i>				ONNYTON	H H		Total Claims All	owed: 9
(Assistant Exa	miner) (Date	e)	PRIM	ARY EXAM	INER /	1-1-05	0.6	0.6
Linda Bas	Les 11/10	11-25					Print Claim(s)	Print Fig.
(Legal Instrument	Examiner) (Date)	(Pr	imary Examiner)	(D	ate)	1	3
Claims renum	bered in the	same orde	ər as presei	nted by appl	icant 🗌	CPA	T.D.	🗆 R.1.47
inal a	inal inal	a	inal	inal a	a line a		inal a	inal inal
Grig Fir	ir gi	Ē	Orig	Orig Lin	j j	- Gi	Crig Lin	Prid Orig
1	31		61	91	_	121	151	181
2	32		62	92		122	152	182
3	33		63	93	_	123	153	183
	34		65	94		124	154	184
6	36		66	96		126	156	186
7	37		67	07				
9	38		<u> </u>		_	127	157	187
•	39		68	98	-	127 128	157 158 159	187 188
10	39 40		68 69 70	98 99 100		127 128 129 130	157 158 159 160	187 188 189 190
10	39 40 41		68 69 70 71	98 99 100 101		127 128 129 130 131	157 158 159 160 161	187 188 189 190 191
10 11 12 13	39 40 41 42 43		68 69 70 71 72 73	98 99 100 101 102 103		127 128 129 130 131 132 133	157 158 159 160 161 162 163	187 188 189 190 191 192 193
10 11 12 13 14	39 40 41 42 43 44		68 69 70 71 72 73 74 74	98 99 100 101 101 102 103 104		127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134	157 158 159 160 161 161 162 163 164	187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194
10 11 12 13 14 15	39 39 40 41 41 42 43 44 44		68 69 670 71 72 73 74 75	98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105		127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135	157 158 159 160 161 161 162 163 164 165	187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195
10 11 12 13 14 14 15 16 16	39 40 41 42 43 43 44 45 46 47		68 69 70 71 72 73 73 74 75 76 77	98 99 100 101 102 103 104 		127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136	157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166	187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196
10 11 12 13 14 14 15 16 17 18	39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48		68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 78	98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108		127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 136 137 138	157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 166 167 168	187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198
10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 1 19	39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49		68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79	98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109		127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 136 137 138 139	157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 166 167 168 169	187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51		68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81	98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110		127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 144	157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 166 167 168 169 170	187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 200
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52		68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82	98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 111		127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 137 138 139 140 141 142	157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 166 167 168 169 170 171	187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 201 202
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53		68 69 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 77 78 79 80 81 82 83	98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 111 112 113		127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 134 135 136 136 137 138 139 140 141 141 142 143	157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 166 167 168 169 170 170 171 172 173	187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 201 202 203
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54		68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85	98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 111 112 113 114		127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 145	157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 167 168 169 170 171 171 172 173 174	187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 201 202 203 204 204
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56		68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 86	98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 112 113 114 115 116		127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 144 145 146	157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 166 167 168 169 170 171 171 172 173 174 175 176	187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 201 202 203 204 205 206
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57		68 69 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 87	98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 111 112 113 114 115 116 117		127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 135 136 136 137 138 139 140 141 142 143 144 145 146 147	157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 166 167 168 169 170 171 172 173 174 175 176 177	187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 207
$ \begin{array}{c ccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccccc$	39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58		68 69 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 89	98 99 100 101 102 103 104 105 106 107 108 109 110 111 112 113 114 115 116 117 118		127 128 129 130 131 132 133 134 134 135 136 136 137 138 139 140 141 141 142 143 144 145 146 147 148	157 158 159 160 161 162 163 164 165 166 166 167 168 169 170 171 171 172 173 174 175 176 177 177	187 188 189 190 191 192 193 194 195 196 197 197 198 199 200 201 202 203 204 205 206 207 206

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office

• • •

.

Part of Paper No. 20051031

··• - . . .

3F^T AVAILABLE COPY

OCT. 6. 2005 2:28PM HITT GAINES 9724808865

NO. 2487 P. 2

RECEIVED CENTRAL FAX CENTER

ATTORNEY DOCKET NO. R.L. MCDOWELL 20-76

OCI 0 6 2005 PATENT

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Title:

Richard L. McDowell, et al.

140

Filed: September 28, 2001

Thai Vu

A PROXIMITY REGULATION SYSTEM FOR USE WITH A PORTABLE CELL PHONE AND A METHOD OF OPERATION THEREOF

Grp/A.U.: 2643

Examiner:

Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, VA 22313-1450



Sir:

AMENDMENT UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.116

The Applicants have carefully considered this application in connection with the Examiner's Final Rejection mailed August 8, 2005, and respectfully request reconsideration of this application in view of the following amendment and remarks.

PAGE 2/5 * RCVD AT 10/5/2005 3:29:08 PM [Eastern Daylight Time] * SVR: USPTO-EFXRF-6/30 * DNIS: 2738300 * CSID:972 480 8865 * DURATION (mm-ss):01-26

	Index of Claims												Application/Control No.										Applicant(s)/Patent under Reexamination							
															09 Ex	/96 ami	7,1 ine	140 er						M(Art	CDC t Un	DW it	EL	LE		.L
															Th	ai l	Ŋ. 1	Vu						26	87					
		1	R	ejeo	cted			ſ	_	n	Thro C	ugh i ance	nun	hera	al)	٦	[Non	-Elec	ted				Ар	pea	al	7		
		=	A	llov	wed				+		 R	estri	cte	- d					Inte	rferer	nce		0	(Obje	ecte	ed			
	Claim				D					 ר		aim	1									J		Date						7
	Claim	1	5	T	Ť		Т	Т	-	-	F							Т	Г		<u>⊢∽</u>		\vdash	T	T	I	Ē		T	-
	Final Original	01/30/05	0/15/0								Final	Original									Final	Original								
•	┝─┼╦	↓	F	+	+	+	╉	╉	+	-	\vdash	51	╉─		+	+	+	+	+	-	⊢	101	Н	+	+	┢			+	-
	2	4	E									52				T	1	1				102]
	-8-	H.		\square	+	+	+	+	+	4		53			+	+-	+	+	+		<u> </u>	103		+	+-	-	Н	$ \cdot $	+	-
	4	17	F	+	+	+	+	-	+	+	\vdash	55	H	\square	+	+	+	+	+	-		104	$\left - \right $	+	+-	+	Н	Η		-
· ·	-6-	+	F		1	+				1		56					t	$^{+}$			·	106								1
	7	Ŧ	F		T		T		-			57			T	T	T	F				107			T]
		E.	E	-+	+	+	+	+	+	-		58	\vdash			+	+	+	+		-	108			+	-	H	$\left \right $	+	-
· ·	10	¥	Ħ		╉	+	╉	+	╋	-	\vdash	60	+		+	+	+	+	+	H	<u> </u>	110	$\left \cdot \right $	+	+		\square	$\left \right $	-+-	1
	11-	4	-									61					t					111			+					1
	12	+		\square	+	+	-	1	1	4		62	П		-	1	Ŧ	+	+	· .		112	- 1						T	-
	+3		E	+	+	+	╈	+	+	-		63	\vdash	\neg	+	+	+	╋				113	\vdash	+	+-	-	⊢	Н	+	-
	15	i.		+	+	+	╈	+	+	1		65	\vdash		+	+	+	╈				115		+	+		Η	Η	+	- .
	16	+	Ξ									66			_							116								1
	17	1			-	+	+	+	+	4		67				+	+	+-	+			117		+	+		Ľ		_	4
	F 19	-		+	╋	+	+	╉	+	-		69	H	+		╉	╋	╋	+			118	Н	+	+		Н		+	-1
1	2 20	=	Ξ		+	+	+	┫	+			70	H			+	╈	+	+	-1		120	\mathbf{H}	+	+		H		-	1
	3 21	=	Ξ		_		1					71		_	4		Γ					121]
	4 22	-	Ξ	+		╇	+	4	+	-	\vdash	72	\vdash	-	+	+-	╇	+	+			122	Ľ I	+	+-	⊢	Н	Н	_	
	<u>5</u> 23 C 24	Ē	2	+	+	+	╉	╉	+	-	\vdash	74	$\left \right $	+	+	╋	╋	╋	+			123	$\left \right $	+	+-	┢─	Н	Η	-+-	-
	7 25	=	1	-	1		+	1	-			75			+	+-	t	+				125		+	+		Н	Η		1
	8 26	=	=	\square	_	\top	Ţ	4	1			76			-	T	T	-	-			126		1					_].
	9 27	-	티	+	+	+	+	+	+	-	-	177				+-	╀	+	+	_	<u> </u>	127	$\left \cdot \right $	+	+		Н	\square	+	-
	29	H	H		-	+	+	╉	+	Η	\vdash	79	H		+	╈	╈	+	┢	-		120	+	+	+	\vdash	Н	\vdash	-	1
	30									1		80					L	T				130			1]
	31	\square	\square	-	-	Ŧ	\bot	4	-	_		81	\square	_		+	F	1	+			131	П	-		Γ		\square	-	-
	32	+	\vdash	+	+	+	+	÷	+	-	-	82	\square	+	+	╋	┝	+	+		<u> </u>	132	\mathbb{H}	+	+	\vdash	\vdash	Н	-	-
	34		H			+						84					t	+		-		134	H	+	1	\vdash		H	+	1
	35			_	T							85				T	T	T				135]
	36			\rightarrow	+	+	+	4	+	-		86	\square		+	+-	╀	+-	+	_		136]
	37	H	\vdash	+	╈	+	+	╉	+	+	\vdash	88	H	+	+	+	╋	+	╋┥			137	\vdash	+	+-	\vdash				4
	39			-+	+	+	+	+	+			89	\square				╈	+	+	-		139	H	+	+-	\vdash	\square	\vdash	+	1
	40			_		\top	\top	\top	T			90			\top		L	T				140								1
	41	\vdash	Η	+		+	+	+	+	-	\vdash	91	$\left \right $	\rightarrow	+	+-	╋	╋	+			141	<u> </u>	+	+-		\square	\vdash		4
	43	+		+	+	+	╉	╉	╈	+	\vdash	93	\vdash	+	+	+	┢	╈	+	-		143	\square	+	+	\vdash	H	\vdash	+	-
	44								1			94						\mathbf{T}				144								1
	45			-	_	+	_	4	\perp			95		_		-		\bot				145		_	_]
	46	H	\vdash	+	+	+	+	+	+	+	\vdash	96	\vdash	+		+	╀	+	+	-		146	Н	+	+	H	\vdash	\vdash	+	-
	48	+	H	-+	+	+	+	╉	╉		\vdash	98	\vdash	-†	+	+	+	+	+	\neg		148	\vdash		+	H	H	┝┤	+	1
	49				_		T					99					Γ					149								1
	50	1					Γ					100				1		L	Ш			150								1

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office

-

Part of Paper No. 20050729

.

	Searc	h Notes		Appl	ication/Control No.	Applie Reexa	Applicant(s)/Patent under Reexamination						
				09/9	67,140	MCD	OWELL ET	AL.					
				Exan	niner	Art Ur	nt						
	•			Thai	N. Vu	2687							
	SEAF	RCHED			SE (INCLUDING	ARCH NOT	'ES STRATEG'	'n					
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner				DATE	EXMR					
455	572	7/30/2005	Ť		Lester Kincaid		07/28/05	W					
	127.1												
	115.1							/					
	550.1				East Search		07/30/05	17					
	300												
	301												
455	569.1	10/31/05	S.T.										
	522												
	575.6				•								
	575.5												
	100		,										
IN	TERFEREN	CE SEARCH	ED										
Class	Subclass	Date	Examiner					<u> </u>					
455	522	10-31-05	8.7,										
455	575.5	4	4										
455	115.1	"	11:										
~													
					L		L	_					

.

.

NO. 2487 P. 1

RECEIVED CENTRAL FAX CENTER

HITT GAINES, P.C. Intellectual Property Law & Related Matters

OCT 0 6 2005

FACSIMILE TRANSMISSION

TO: USPTO Examiner: Thai Vu - Art Unit: 2643

FAX NO. 571-273-8300

FROM: J. Joel Justiss

RE: Serial No.: 09/967,140 Attorney Docket No.: R.L. MCCOWELL 20-76 Amendment Under 37 C.F.R. § 1,116

- DATE: October 6, 2005
- PAGES: 6 (including cover page)

If you do not receive the indicated number of pages, please notify the sender at the telephone number shown below. Thank you.

THE INFORMATION CONTAINED IN THIS FACSIMILS TRANSMISSION IS AN ATTORNEY-CLEENT PRIVILEGED, CONFIDENTIAL COMMUNICATION INTENDED FOR THE EXCLUSIVE USE OF THE INTENDED RECIPIENT NAMED ABOVE. IF YOU ARE NOT THE INTENDED RECIPIENT, OR ARE AN EMPLOYEE OR AGENT RESPONSIBLE FOR DELIVERING THIS TRANSMISSION TO THE INTENDED RECIPIENT, YOU ARE HEREBY NOTIFIED THAT ANY DISSEMINATION, DISTRIBUTION OR COPYING OF THIS TRANSMISSION IS STRICTLY FROMEDIED. IF YOU HAVE RECEIVED THIS TRANSMISSION IN SERVICE POLICY FOR HEREBY NOTIFIES TRANSMISSION IN THE TELEPHONE NUMBER SHOWN BELOW AND MAIL THE ORIGINAL TRANSMISSION TO THE SENDER IMMEDIATELY AT THE TELEPHONE NUMBER SHOWN BELOW AND MAIL THE ORIGINAL TRANSMISSION TO THE ADDRESS BELOW. WE WILL RELIMBURGE YOU FOR ANY REASONABLE EXPENSE YOU MAY INCUR DOING SO. THANK YOU.

MESSAGE:

Mailing Address: P.O. Bex 832570, Richardson, Texas 75083-2570 Street Address: Palisades Central II, 2435 North Central Expressway, Suite 1300, Richardson, Texas 75080-2753 U.S.A. Tel: (972) 480-8800 Fax: (972) 480-8865 firm@hittgaines.com

PAGE 1/6* RCVD AT 10/6/2005 3:29:08 PM [Eastern Daylight Time] * SVR:USPTO-EFXRF-6/30 * DNIS:2738300 * CSID:972 480 8865 * DURATION (mm-ss):01-26

BEAT AVAILABLE COPY

OCT. 6.2005 2:28PM HITT GAINES 9724808865

NO. 2487 P. 2

PATENT

RECEIVED

CENTRAL FAX CENTER

OCT 0 6 2005

ATTORNEY DOCKET NO. R.L. MCDOWELL 20-76

IN THE UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE

Applicant;	Richard L. McDowell, et al.
Serial No.:	09/967,140
Filed:	September 28, 2001
Title:	A PROXIMITY REGULATION SYSTEM FOR USE WITH A PORTABLE CELL PHONE AND A METHOD OF OPERATION THEREOF
Grp./A.U.:	2643
Examiner:	Thai Vu

Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, VA 22313-1450



Sir:

AMENDMENT UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.116

The Applicants have carefully considered this application in connection with the Examiner's Final Rejection mailed August 8, 2005, and respectfully request reconsideration of this application in view of the following amendment and remarks.

PAGE 2/6 * RCVD AT 10/6/2005 3:29:08 PM [Eastern Daylight Time] * SVR:USPTO-EFXRF-6/30 * DNIS:2738300 * CSID:972 480 8865 * DURATION (mm-ss):01-26

IN THE CLAIMS:

Claims 1-18 (canceled)

19. (Previously Presented) A portable cell phone, comprising:

a power circuit that provides a network adjusted transmit power level as a function of a position to a communications tower; and

a proximity regulation system, including:

a location sensing subsystem that determines a location of said portable cell phone proximate a user; and

a power governing subsystem, coupled to said location sensing subsystem, that determines a proximity transmit power level of said portable cell phone based on said location and determines a transmit power level for said portable cell phone based on said network adjusted transmit power level and said proximity transmit power level.

20. (Previously Presented) The portable cell phone as recited in Claim 19 wherein said location sensing subsystem determines said location with respect to a portion of a body of said user.

21. (Original) The portable cell phone as recited in Claim 19 wherein said proximity transmit power level is limited to a predetermined maximum level.

22. (Original) The portable cell phone as recited in Claim 19 wherein said proximity transmit power level is maximum when said portable cell phone is operating in a headset operation mode or data transfer operation mode.

23. (Original) The portable cell phone as recited in Claim 19 wherein said portable cell phone is located on a belt-clip of said user.

2

PAGE 3/6 * RCVD AT 10/6/2005 3:29:08 PM [Eastern Daylight Time] * SVR:USPTO-EFXRF-6/30 * DNIS:2738300 * CSID:972 480 8865 * DURATION (mm-ss):01-26

24. (Original) The portable cell phone as recited in Claim 19 wherein said location sensing subsystem or said power governing subsystem is embodied in an integrated circuit.

25. (Previously Presented) The portable cell phone as recited in Claim 19 wherein said proximity transmit power level is reduced to one level when said location is within a vicinity of a user's head and reduced to a second level when said location is within a vicinity of a user's midsection.

26. (Original) The portable cell phone as recited in Claim 19 wherein said location sensing subsystem determines said location by employing a sensor selected from the group consisting of:

a designated sensor,

- a contact sensor,
- a belt clip sensor, and
- a cradle sensor.

27. (Original) The portable cell phone as recited in Claim 19 wherein said location sensing subsystem determines said location by ascertaining a mode of operation of said portable cell phone,

3

PAGE 4/6 * RCVD AT 10/6/2005 3:29:08 PM [Eastern Daylight Time] * SVR: USPTO-EFXRF-6/30 * DNIS: 2738300 * CSID: 9/2 480 8865 * DURATION (mm-ss): 01-26

REMARKS/ARGUMENTS

The Applicants originally submitted Claims 1-27 in the application and amended Claims 1-2, 10-11, 19-20 and 25 in a previous response. In the present Final Rejection, the Examiner has indicated that Claims 19-27 are allowed. In order to expedite issuance, the Applicants have canceled Claims 1-18 without prejudice or disclaimer to place the application in condition for allowance. Accordingly, Claims 19-27 are currently pending in the application.

I. Rejection of Claims 1-3, 6-7, 9-12, 15-16 and 18 under 35 U.S.C. §102

The Examiner has rejected Claims 1-3, 6-7, 9-12, 15-16 and 18 under 35 U.S.C. §102(b) as being anticipated by U.S. Patent No. 6,456,856 to Werling, *et al.* The §102(b) rejection, however, is now moot since the Applicants have canceled Claims 1-3, 6-7, 9-12, 15-16 and 18 without prejudice or disclaimer. Accordingly, the Applicants respectfully request the Examiner to withdraw the §102 rejection and allow issuance of the pending claims.

II. Rejection of Claims 4-5, 8, 13-14 and 17 under 35 U.S.C. §103

The Examiner has rejected Claims 4-5, 8, 13-14 and 17 under 35 U.S.C. §103(a) as being unpatentable over Werling in view of the following U.S. Patents: U.S. Patent No. 6, 195,562 to Pirhonen for Claims 4 and 13; U.S. Patent No. 6,408,187 to Merriam for Claims 5 and 14; and Merriam in further view of U.S. Patent No. 4,636,741 to Mitzlaff for Claims 8 and 17. The §103(a) rejection, however, is now moot since the Applicants have canceled Claims 4-5, 8, 13-14 and 17 without prejudice or disclaimer. Accordingly, the Applicants respectfully request the Examiner to withdraw the §103(a) rejection and allow issuance of the pending claims.

4

PAGE 5/6 * RCVD AT 10/6/2005 3:29:08 PM [Eastern Daylight Time] * SVR:USPTO-EFXRF-6/30 * DNIS:2738300 * CSID:972 480 8865 * DURATION (mm-ss):01-26

III. Conclusion

In view of the foregoing amendment and remarks, the Applicants now see all of the Claims currently pending in this application to be in condition for allowance and therefore earnestly solicit a Notice of Allowance for Claims 19-27.

The Applicants request the Examiner to telephone the undersigned attorney of record at (972) 480-8800 if such would further or expedite the prosecution of the present application. The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any fees, credits or overpayments to deposit account 08-2395.

Respectfully submitted,

HITT GAINES, PC

de set hus istration No. 48

6/05 Dated:

P.O. Box 832570 Richardson, Texas 75083 (972) 480-8800

5

PAGE 6/6 * RCVD AT 10/6/2005 3:29:08 PM [Eastern Daylight Time] * SVR: USPTO-EFXRF-6/30 * DNIS: 2738300 * CSID: 972 480 8865 * DURATION (mm-ss): 01-26

PTO/SB/06 (12-04)

Approved for use through 7/31/2006. OMB 0651-003/ U.S. Patent and Trademark Office: U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE



If the entry in column 1 is less than the entry in column 2, write "0" in column 3.
 "If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 20, enter "20".
 "If the "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE is less than 10, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE IS less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE IS less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE IS less than 3, enter "3".
 The "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS SPACE IS less than 3, enter "3".
 Tha "Highest Number Previously Paid For" IN THIS S

If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 and select option 2.

. ·

	UNITED STATES DEPAR United States Patent and Address: COMMISSIONER F P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Virginia 223 www.uspto.gov	United States Patent and Trademark Office Address: COMMISSIONER FOR PATENTS P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Virginia 22313-1450 www.uspio.gov							
APPLICATION NO.	FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.					
09/967,140	09/28/2001	Richard L. McDowell	R.L. MCDOWELL 20-76	4925					
	590 08/08/2005		EXAM	INER					
47396 7	590 08/08/2005								
47396 7 HITT GAINE	S, PC		VU, T	HAI					
47396 7 HITT GAINE AGERE SYST	ES, PC EMS INC.		VU, T	HAI					

C

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

PTO-90C (Rev. 10/03)

	Application No.	Applicant(s)												
	09/967,140	MCDOWELL ET AL.												
Office Action Summary	Examiner	Art Unit												
	Thai N. Vu	2687												
The MAILING DATE of this communication app Period for Reply	ears on the cover sheet with the c	orrespondence address												
A SHORTENED STATUTORY PERIOD FOR REPLY THE MAILING DATE OF THIS COMMUNICATION. • Extensions of time may be available under the provisions of 37 CFR 1.13 after SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this communication. • If the period for reply specified above is less than thirty (30) days, a reply • If NO period for reply is specified above, the maximum statutory period w • Failure to reply within the set or extended period for reply will, by statute, Any reply received by the Office later than three months after the mailing earned patent term adjustment. See 37 CFR 1.704(b).	Y IS SET TO EXPIRE <u>3</u> MONTH(36(a). In no event, however, may a reply be tim within the statutory minimum of thirty (30) day ill apply and will expire SIX (6) MONTHS from cause the application to become ABANDONE date of this communication, even if timely filed	S) FROM nely filed s will be considered timely. the mailing date of this communication. D (35 U.S.C. § 133). , may reduce any												
Status														
1) Responsive to communication(s) filed on <u>11/18</u>	<u>3/2004</u> .													
2a)⊠ This action is FINAL. 2b)∏ This	action is non-final.													
3) Since this application is in condition for allowance except for formal matters, prosecution as to the merits is														
closed in accordance with the practice under E	x parte Quayle, 1935 C.D. 11, 43	53 O.G. 213.												
Disposition of Claims														
4) Claim(s) <u>1-27</u> is/are pending in the application.														
4a) Of the above claim(s) is/are withdraw	4a) Of the above claim(s) is/are withdrawn from consideration.													
5) \boxtimes Claim(s) <u>19-27</u> is/are allowed.														
6) \times Claim(s) <u>7-76</u> is/are rejected.														
8) Claim(s) are subjected to:	r election requirement.													
Application Papers														
Ω The specification is objected to by the Examine	r ·													
10) The drawing(s) filed on is/are: a) acc	 epted or b) objected to by the l	Examiner.												
Applicant may not request that any objection to the	drawing(s) be held in abeyance. See	e 37 CFR 1.85(a).												
Replacement drawing sheet(s) including the correct	ion is required if the drawing(s) is ob	jected to. See 37 CFR 1.121(d).												
11) The oath or declaration is objected to by the Ex	aminer. Note the attached Office	Action or form PTO-152.												
Priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119														
12) Acknowledgment is made of a claim for foreign	priority under 35 U.S.C. § 119(a))-(d) or (f).												
a) All b) Some * c) None of:														
1. Certified copies of the priority document	s have been received.													
2. Certified copies of the priority document	s have been received in Applicati	on No												
3. Copies of the certified copies of the prior	rity documents have been receive	ed in this National Stage												
application from the international Bureau * Soo the attached detailed Office action for a list	of the certified conies not receive	h												
	e, die continen oppios not robeiw													
Attachment(s)		(870.412)												
Notice of References Cited (P10-892) Notice of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Review (PT0-948)	4) Interview Summary Paper No(s)/Mail D	ate												
 Information Disclosure Statement(s) (PTO-1449 or PTO/SB/08) Paper No(s)/Mail Date 05/24/2005. 	5) 🔛 Notice of Informal F 6) 🔲 Other:	Patent Application (PTO-152)												
J.S. Patent and Trademark Office														

PTOL-326 (Rev. 1-04)

Office Action Summary

DETAILED ACTION

Response to Amendment

1. Applicant's arguments with respect to claims 1-18 have been considered but are

moot in view of the new ground(s) of rejection.

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 102

2. The following is a quotation of the appropriate paragraphs of 35 U.S.C. 102 that

form the basis for the rejections under this section made in this Office action:

A person shall be entitled to a patent unless -

(e) the invention was described in (1) an application for patent, published under section 122(b), by another filed in the United States before the invention by the applicant for patent or (2) a patent granted on an application for patent by another filed in the United States before the invention by the applicant for patent, except that an international application filed under the treaty defined in section 351(a) shall have the effects for purposes of this subsection of an application filed in the United States only if the international application designated the United States and was published under Article 21(2) of such treaty in the English language.

3. Claims 1-3, 6-7, 9-12, 15-16 and 18 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(e) as

being anticipated by Werling et al. (U.S. Patent #: 6,456,856; hereinafter "Werling").

Regarding claim 1, Werling teaches a system for use with a portable cell phone,

a proximity regulation system (FIG. 1), comprising:

a location sensing subsystem configured to determine a location of said portable

cell phone with respect to a portion of a body of a user (i.e. the proximity detector noted

in FIG. 1, block 18; column 3, lines 1-14 - inherently, the detector is capable of

distinguishing areas having different heat or humidity signatures, e.g. bare skin areas

emits more heat or higher humidity than clothed areas); and

Page 2

a power governing subsystem, coupled to said location sensing subsystem, configured to determine a proximity transmit power level of said portable cell phone based on said location (FIG. 1, block 17; column 3, lines 15-18).

Regarding claim 2, Werling teaches limitations of the claim in column 3, lines 1-19; column 4, lines 16-36 (i.e. with different areas of the user body provides, detector provides different data value resulting in different transmit power values).

Regarding claim 3, Werling teaches limitations of the claim in column 4, lines 36-60 (i.e. P_{MAX}).

Regarding claim 6, Werling further teaches limitations of the claim in FIG.1, block 17 and column 2, lines 54-66 (i.e. Micro controllers which are widely available as integrated circuits).

Regarding claim 7, Werling further teaches limitations of the claim in FIG. 4 and column 4, lines 40-60.

Regarding claim 9, Werling further teaches limitations of the claim in column 3, lines 1-14.

Regarding claim 10, Werling teaches a method of operating a portable cell phone, comprising:

determining a location of said portable cell phone with respect to a portion of a body of a user (i.e. based on temperature and humidity, the proximity can be determined, column 3, lines 1-14 - inherently, the detector is capable of distinguishing areas having different heat or humidity signatures, e.g. bare skin areas emits more heat or higher humidity than clothed areas);

23

providing a control signal based on said location (i.e. control signal provided by a microcontroller in FIG. 1, column 3 lines 15-18); and

determining a proximity transmit power level of said portable cell phone based on said control signal (FIG. 1 block 16, column 3, lines 15-18).

Regarding claim 11, Werling teaches limitations of the claim in column 3, lines 1-

14 (i.e. with different areas of the user body provides, detector provides different data value resulting in different transmit power values).

Regarding claim 12, Werling teaches limitations of the claim in column 4, lines 36-60 (i.e. P_{MAX}).

Regarding claim 15, Werling further teaches limitations of the claim in FIG.1,

block 17 and column 2, lines 54-66 (i.e. Micro controllers which are widely available as integrated circuits).

Regarding claim 16, Werling further teaches limitations of the claim in FIG. 4 and column 4, lines 40-60.

Regarding claim 18, Werling further teaches limitations of the claim in column 3, lines 1-14.

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 103

The following is a quotation of 35 U.S.C. 103(a) which forms the basis for all

obviousness rejections set forth in this Office action:

(a) A patent may not be obtained though the invention is not identically disclosed or described as set forth in section 102 of this title, if the differences between the subject matter sought to be patented and the prior art are such that the subject matter as a whole would have been obvious at the time the invention was made to a person having ordinary skill in the art to which said subject matter pertains. Patentability shall not be negatived by the manner in which the invention was made.

5. Claims 4 and 13 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Werling (U.S. Patent #: 6,456,856) in view of Pirhonen et al. (US Patent #: 6,195,562; hereinafter "Pirhonen").

Regarding claims 4 and 13, Werling teaches all subject matter as claimed above except for proximity transmit power level being maximum when said portable cell phone is operating in a headset operation mode or data transfer operation mode. However, Pirhonen teaches such limitations in column 2, lines 29-37 for the purpose of achieving high speed data transmission.

Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to incorporate the use of proximity transmit power level being maximum when said portable cell phone is operating in a data transfer operation mode, as taught by Pirhonen, in view of Werling, in order to achieve high speed data transmission.

 Claims 5 and 14 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Werling (U.S. Patent #: 6,456,856) in view of Merriam (U.S. Patent #: 6,408,187; hereinafter "Merriam").

Regarding claims 5 and 14, Werling teaches all subject matter as claimed above except for portable cell phone being located on a belt-clip of the user. However, Merriam teaches such limitations in column 3, lines 36-49 for the purpose of indicating whether the device within relatively close proximity to a user.

Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at

25

the time the inventions was made to incorporate the use of portable cell phone being located on a belt-clip of the user, as taught by Merriam, in view of Werling, in order to determine the behavior of the communications device.

7. Claims 8 and 17 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Werling et al. (U.S. Patent #: 6,456,856) in view of Merriam (U.S. Patent #: 6,408,187) and Mitzlaff (U.S. Patent #: 4,636,741; hereinafter "Mitzlaff").

Regarding claims 8 and 17, Werling teaches all subject matter as claimed above. Werlington further teaches location sensing subsystem determining said location by employing a sensor selected from the group consisting of:

a designated sensor (column 3, lines 1-14),

a contact sensor (i.e. heat/humidity sensor is used to detect a contact with

human skin, column 3, lines 1-14)

It should be noticed that Werlington fails to clearly teach a belt clip sensor.

However, Merriam teaches such limitations in column 3, lines 36-49 for the purpose of indicating whether the device within relatively close proximity to a user.

Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to incorporate the use of a belt clip sensor, as taught by Merriam, in view of Werlington, in order to determine the behavior of the mobile unit.

It should be further noticed that Werlington and Merriam, in combination, fails to clearly teach a cradle sensor. However, Mitzlaff teaches such limitations in the abstract for the purpose of detecting the presence of the Mobile unit.

Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to incorporate the use of a cradle sensor, as taught by Mitzlaff, into view of Werlington and Merriam, in order to adjust the transmission power accordingly.

Allowable Subject Matter

Claims 19-27 are allowed.

9. The following is a statement of reasons for the indication of allowable subject matter: The prior art fails to teach the feature of a portable cell phone, comprising:

a power circuit that provides a network adjusted transmit power level as a function of a position to a communications tower; and

a proximity regulation system, including:

a location sensing subsystem that determines a location of said portable cell phone proximate a user; and

a power governing subsystem, coupled to said location sensing subsystem, that determines a proximity transmit power level of said portable cell phone based on said location and determines a transmit power level for said portable cell phone based on said network adjusted transmit power level and said proximity transmit power level.

Conclusion

10. Applicant's amendment necessitated the new ground(s) of rejection presented in this Office action. Accordingly, **THIS ACTION IS MADE FINAL**. See MPEP

Page 7

§ 706.07(a). Applicant is reminded of the extension of time policy as set forth in 37 CFR 1.136(a).

A shortened statutory period for reply to this final action is set to expire THREE MONTHS from the mailing date of this action. In the event a first reply is filed within TWO MONTHS of the mailing date of this final action and the advisory action is not mailed until after the end of the THREE-MONTH shortened statutory period, then the shortened statutory period will expire on the date the advisory action is mailed, and any extension fee pursuant to 37 CFR 1.136(a) will be calculated from the mailing date of the advisory action. In no event, however, will the statutory period for reply expire later than SIX MONTHS from the date of this final action.

Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to Thai N. Vu whose telephone number is 571-272-7928. The examiner can normally be reached on 9:00AM-7:00PM, M-F.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Lester Kincaid can be reached on 571-272-7922. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 703-872-9306.

Page 8

ŧ

Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see http://pair-direct.uspto.gov. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (toll-free).

IMARY EXAMINER

Thai N. Vu Examiner Art Unit 2687

MAY 2 4 2005	Appr U.S. Patent and Traden espond to a collection of Informat	PTC/SB/0&A (09-03) oved for use through 07/31/2006. OMB 0551-0031 nark Office; U.S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE on unless is contains e valid OMB control number.
Substitute for form 1449/PTO	Cor	nplete if Known
A DE	Application Number	09/967,140
INFORMATION DISCLOSURE	Filing Date	September 28, 2001
	First Named Inventor	Richard L. McDowell
STATEMENT BY APPLICANT	Art Unit	2643
(Use as many sheets as necessary)	Examiner Name	Thai Vu
Sheet 1 of 1	Attorney Docket Number	R.L. MCDOWELL 20-76

Examiner	Cite	Document Number	Publication Date	Name of Patentee or	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where
Instats	NO.	Number-Kind Code ^{2 (# Incent)}	MM-DD-TTTT	Approxime or Cired Document	Figures Appear
		US-			
		US-			'
		US-			
		US-			
	1	US-			
		US-			
		US-			1

		FOREIGN	PATENT DOCL	IMENTS		
Examiner Initials*	Cite No.1	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages Or Relevant Figures Appear	70
	1	Country Code ³ "Number ⁴ "Kind Code ⁵ (if known)				-
7-	-	WO 02/05443 A2	01/17/2002	Irvin, et al.		
-						
			1			
Examiner	17	γ , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,		Date		
Signature	1/	1 utton		Considered	10/05/00	

Signature Considered Of Signature Considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered, include, doty of this form with next communication to applicant. 'Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). 'See Kinds Codes USPTO Platent Documents at www.spito.av or MPEP 901.04. 'Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). 'For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must proceede the serial number of the patent document. 'Acid of document by the appropriate symbola as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 If possible. 'Applicant' is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached. This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO Forces) an application. Confidentially is governed by 51 U.S.C. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 2 hours to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form addre suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandra, VA 22313-1450. If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 (1-800-786-9199) and select option 2.

.

.

.

					Application/C 09/967,140	Control No.	Applicant(s)/Pat Reexamination MCDOWELL E	tent Under TAL.
		Notice of Reference	s Cited		Examiner		Art Unit	
					Thai N. Vu		2687	Page 1 of 1
				U.S. P	ATENT DOCUM	ENTS		
*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY			Name		Classification
	A	US-6,456,856 B1	09-2002	Werling	g et al.			455/575.5
_	в	US-6,195,562 B1	02-2001	Pirhone	en et al.			455/553.1
	с	US-6,408,187 B1	06-2002	Merriar	m, Charles			455/458
	D	US-4,636,741	01-1987	Mitzlaf	f, James E.			455/573
	Ē	US-						
	F	US-						
	G	US-						
	н	US-					,	
	Ι	US-						
	J	US-						
_	κ	US-						
	L	US-						
	м	US-						
				FOREIGN	PATENT DOC	UMENTS		
*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY		Country	Name		Classification
	N							<u> </u>
L	0							
	Р							
	Q			<u> </u>				
	R							
<u> </u>	S							
	T							
*	r	Inclu	de as applicabl	e: Author.	Title Date, Publi	sher, Edition or Volume	, Pertinent Pages)	
-								
	U							
	v							
	w							
	x							

A copy of this reference is not being furnished with this Office action. (See MPEP § 707.05(a).) Dates in MM-YYYY format are publication dates. Classifications may be US or foreign.

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office PTO-892 (Rev. 01-2001)

Notice of References Cited

Part of Paper No. 20050729

	Index of Claims											7	Application/Control No. Applicant(s)/Pater Reexamination										ent u	inder					
														09/9 Exar	67 nin	,14 ier	0						MC Art	DC Uni	it	ELI	_ ET	AL	
													-	Thai	N	. V	u						268	37					
			1	Rej	ected	4		_	(T)	hrou	gh n	ume	eral)		N	No	n-E	lect	ted		A		Арр	bea	1	7		
			=	Alle	owed	1		+		Re	stric	ted				I	Int	erfe	eren	ice		0	c	Dbje	cte	d			
	Cla	im			D	ate] [Cla	aim)ate	, ,			 ו ר		im				Date	, ,			
-		a	2		ΤŤ		Τ	Π	11		5		Τ	TĪ				T	11	_		Π	Т	T				П	
	Final	Origin	07/30/0							Fina	Origin									Fina	Origin								
		1	V		\square						51		+	\square	_				1		101					_			
	-	2	v √	+	╆┾	+	+	\vdash	+		52		+			-	+				102	$\left \cdot \right $	+				+		
		4	V		\square	_		\square] [54		T				-				104		\mp	_	\square		1		
		5 6	V		++			\vdash			56		+	+			-				105								
		7	V		\square			\square			57		+	\square		_	_]		107	\square	—		\Box		_		
		8	V		++	+	+	++	+		58		-	+	_	-	+	+			108	\vdash		+-	H	+		+	
		10	V								60		T						1		110		_						
		11	V		++		+	\vdash	+		61	\vdash	+	+					+		111	$\left - \right $	·	+	$\left \cdot \right $			+	
		13	V								63		-	+							113								
		14	V				—]		64		\mp				_				114		_	-					
		15	₩		++	+	╉		+		65 66		+	+			-+-	+-			115	\vdash	-+-	+	$\left \right $		+	+	
		17	V								67		1				\pm		1		117	\Box	士		\Box				
	<u> </u>	18	1		+-+	+	+		+		68	$\left \right $	╋	+		\vdash	+	+-	-		118	\vdash	+	+	$\left \cdot \right $	-		+	
		20	=			+					70		+				+				120								
		21	=			\mp	1]		71		+				_	-	-		121		_	-					
	<u> </u>	22	=	\vdash	++	+	+	++	-		72		+	+	_		+	+			122	+	+	+	$\left \right $	+	+	+	
		24	=]		74		\bot								124						_		l
		25	=		++	_	+	++	- 1		75	\vdash	+	+		$\left \right $	-+-	+-	11		125	┝╌┤			\square	+		+	
		20	=			+	+				77		İ								127								-
		28				\square]		78		\mp				_	_			128	\square	_			_		+	
	-	30	\vdash		+		+	++	+		80	\vdash	+	+		$\left \right $	-+-	+			130	+		-	\vdash			+	
		31					1	Ħ	1		81		1								131								
		32		\vdash	++		+-	++	+		82	\vdash	+		\vdash	\vdash	+	+-	+		132	$\left \right $		+			+	+	
		34									84										134						_		
		35			\square	_	F	\square	-		85		F	+		\square	-		$\left \right $		135	\square						+	
	\vdash	30	+-	\vdash	┽┼	+	+-	++	-	<u> </u>	87	++	+	+-	-	\vdash	+	+			137								
	_	38							1		88		-								138	\square							
		39	-		++	+	+	┝╌┠╴	-	-	89		╋	+			\rightarrow	+-			139	$\left \right $		+			+		
	-	40				\pm					91										141	\Box							
		42			\square		T				92	H									142	\square	-	-	H				
		43	\vdash		+	+	+	++	+		93	++	+	+	\vdash		+	+	1		143			-	\vdash	\square		+-	
		45	Ĺ						1		95							\mp	1		145								
		46	.	\square	╉╌╿		+-	$\left \right $	-		96	$\left \cdot \right $	+	+				+-	-	<u> </u>	146	+		+-	Н	\vdash	+		
		48							-		98		+						1		148								
1		49			\square		-	IT			99	H				П	-		-		149	\square		+	\square				
	L	50	1					<u> </u>		L	1100	L. L								<u> </u>	150		ł	_					1

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office

Part of Paper No. 20050729

SEAR(Subclass 572 127.1	CHED Date 7/30/2005	Examiner	09/967,140 Examiner Thai N. Vu SE (INCLUDING	Art Un 2687 2687	DWELL ET A	λL
SEARC Subclass 572 127.1	CHED Date	Examiner	Thai N. Vu SE (INCLUDIN	2687 ARCH NOT	ĒS	
SEARC Subclass 572 127.1	Date 7/30/2005	Examiner	SE (INCLUDIN	ARCH NOT	ES	
SEARC Subclass 572 127.1	Date 7/30/2005	Examiner	SE (INCLUDING	ARCH NOT	ES	
Subclass 572 127.1	Date 7/30/2005	Examiner			STRATEGY)
572 127.1	7/30/2005				DATE	EXM
127.1		T	Lester Kincaid		07/28/05	TV
115.1						
550.1			East Search		07/30/05	17
300						
301						
	····· · · - ·					
REERENC	ESEARCH	ED				
Subclass	Date	Examiner				
		<u> </u>	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			
	300 301 RFERENC Subclass	300 301 301 Subclass Date	300	300	300	300

EN	
2643	
PATENT	

OIPE	DOCKET NO. R.L.	MCDOWELL 20-76
MAY 2 1	IN THE	UNITED STATES PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE
TRA	In re application of:	Richard L. McDowell, et al.
	Serial No.:	09/967,140
	Filed:	September 28, 2001
	For:	A PROXIMITY REGULATION SYSTEM FOR USE WITH A PORTABLE CELL PHONE AND A METHOD OF OPERATION THEREOF
	Group:	2643
	Examiner:	Thai Vu

Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

Sir:

05/19/03	(Date)		or rateins, Aica	antaria, VA 2	2313,0
DEART	= SAM	۷.			e i i
(Printed or typed nam		the certificate)			÷.
(Signature of the per	son signing the certif	icate)			

INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT

In accordance with 37 C.F.R. §1.56 and the provisions of 37 C.F.R. §§1.97 and 1.98 and §609 of the Manual of Patent Examining Procedure, Applicant hereby makes a disclosure of the patents, publications and other information listed below and on the accompanying form IDS by Applicant, which may be potentially material to the patentability of the invention disclosed in the above-referenced application. Pursuant to § 1.97(e) the Applicant hereby states that each item of

information contained in the information disclosure statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application. A copy of the listed reference is submitted herewith. A disclosures was previously filed on October 1, 2002.

Foreign Publication No.	Country	Date
WO 02/05443 A2	WO/PCT	January 17, 2002

A copy of the above reference was previously filed with the previous disclosure but was not listed on Form PTO/SB/08A.

As attorney for the Applicant, I am signing below on the basis of the information supplied by an individual designated in § 1.56(c).

The Commissioner is hereby authorized to charge any fees connected with this communication or credit any overpayment to Deposit Account No. 08-2395.

Respectfully submitted,

HITT GAINES, P.C.

el Justiss

Registration No. 48,981

51905 Date:

Hitt Gaines, P.C. P.O. Box 832570 Richardson, Texas 75083-2570 (972) 480-8800

-2-

PATEN	MAY 2 4	2005 er the Pa	erwork Reduction	Act of	1995, no persi	ons are required to re	Appr U.S. Patent and Trader spond to a collection of informat	oved for use ti nark Office; U. ion unless it o	PTC/SB/08A (08-03) hrough 07/31/2006. OMB 0651-0031 S. DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE ontains a valid OMB control number.
Ę	Su Su	bstitute fo	or form 1449/PTO				Cor	nplete if l	Known
	ADE	a we					Application Number	09/967,1	40
	INFORMATION DISCLOSUR				Filing Date	September 28, 2001 Richard L. McDowell			
				SUKE	First Named Inventor				
	8	бТАТ	EMENTE	3Y .	APPLIC	CANT	Art Unit	2643	
			(Use as many sh	eets a	s necessary)		Examiner Name	Thai Vu	
	Sheet	1		of	1		Attorney Docket Number	R.L. MCI	DOWELL 20-76
	r	·					DOCUMENTS		
	Examiner	Cite	Documo	ot Nhu	mhor	Dublication Date	Name of Patentee	~	Paras Columns Lines M/hore
	Initials*	No.1	Docume	ni Nui	IDEI	MM-DD-YYYY	Applicant of Cited Doc	ument	Relevant Passages or Relevant
			Number-Kin	d Code	2 (f known)				Figures Appear
			US-						

Number-Nind Code		
US-		

		FOREIG	IN PATENT DOCI	JMENTS			
Examiner Cite Initials* No.1		Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date	Name of Applicant of (Patentee or Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages	
		Country Code ³ "Number ⁴ "Kind Code ⁵ (if known)	MM-DD-YYYY			Or Relevant Figures Appear	۳°
		WO 02/05443 A2	01/17/2002	Irvin, et al.			
Examiner					Date		
Signature					Considered		

Signature Considered Considered whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication applicant. 'Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of Japanese patent documents at <u>www.uspto.gov</u> or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. ⁵ Kind of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST.16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached. This collection of information is required by 37 CFR 1.97 and 1.98. The information is required to obtain or retain a benefit by the public which is to file (and by the USPTO to process) an application. Confidentiality is governed by 35 U.Sc. 122 and 37 CFR 1.14. This collection is estimated to take 2 hours to complete, including gathering, preparing, and submitting the completed application form to the USPTO. Time will vary depending upon the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you require to complete this form and/or suggestions for reducing this burden, should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Commissioner for Patents, P.O. Box 1450, Alexandria, VA 22313-1450. *If you need assistance in completing the form, call 1-800-PTO-9199 (1-800-786-9199) and select option 2.*

.

.
(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization International Bureau



PCT

j

(43) International Publication Date 17 January 2002 (17.01.2002)

(51) International Patent Classification7: H04B 1/00

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US01/41059

- (22) International Filing Date: 20 June 2001 (20.06.2001)
- (25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data: 09/612,034 7 July 2000 (07.07.2000) US

- (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): ERICS-SON INC. [US/US]; 7001 Development Drive, Research Triangle Park, NC 27709 (US).
- (72) Inventors; and

 \mathcal{A}

R

i.

 (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): IRVIN, David, R. [US/US]; 1546 Iredell Drive, Raleigh, NC 27608 (US).
 RYDBECK, Nils [SE/US]; 207 Rutherglen, Cary, NC WO 02/05443 A2 27511 (US). HAYES, Gerard, J. [US/US]; 207 Lilliput Lane, Wake Forest, NC 27587 (US).

(10) International Publication Number

- (74) Agents: BENNETT, David, E. et al.; Coats & Bennett, PLLC, Post Office Box 5, Raleigh, NC 27602 (US).
- (81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.
- (84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

[Continued on next page]

(54) Title: PORTABLE COMMUNICATION DEVICE WITH RF OUTPUT POWER CAPPED WHEN THE DEVICE OPERATES IN VERY CLOSE PROXIMITY TO A HUMAN BODY



(57) Abstract: A mobile terminal used in a wireless communication system is operable to limit transmitter power if proximate a human body. The mobile terminal includes a housing. A transmitter in the housing is connected to an antenna. The transmitter has a power control loop controlling transmitter power. Α detector detects if the housing is proximate a human body. A control is operatively connected to the transmitter power control loop and to the detector, the control limiting transmitter power if the detector detects that the housing is proximate a human body.

WO 02/05443 A2

)

Published:

 without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report

)

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette. .

.

PCT/US01/41059

PORTABLE COMMUNICATION DEVICE WITH RF OUTPUT POWER CAPPED WHEN THE DEVICE OPERATES IN VERY CLOSE PROXIMITY TO A HUMAN BODY

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention relates to a mobile terminal used in a wireless communication system and, more particularly, to a mobile terminal operable to limit transmitter power if proximate a human body.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

A mobile terminal used in wireless communication systems, such as cellular telephone systems, is generally a portable device. In fact, mobile terminals are becoming small enough to fit into a user's pocket, and therefore be very close to the user's body. The mobile terminal includes a transmitter for transmitting a radio frequency (RF) signal through the air.

In a cellular communication system the mobile terminal conducts radio communications with a base station located proximate the mobile terminal. Cellular communication systems include control systems for limiting power. Typically, the base station instructs the mobile terminal to use the least power to avoid interference with other mobile terminals. The base station does so by measuring signal strength and returning instructions to the mobile terminal to modify transmitter power output.

While conducting a voice call, the mobile terminal is placed in a "talk" position next to the user's head. Although there is no basis for concerns regarding an antenna being proximate the user, for psychological comfort the user can hold the mobile terminal spaced away or at an angle so that the antenna is farther from the user's head. Mobile

1

WO 02/05443

PCT/US01/41059

ì

terminals are also used to provide wireless connection for personal computers and the like to gain access to the Internet. With smaller mobile terminals the user might slip the mobile terminal into a shirt pocket or the like while the call is being conducted.

Again, to provide psychological comfort regarding RF transmitters being very close to a human body, there is a need to control RF power output under such situations.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

)

In accordance with the invention, there is provided a mobile terminal that caps or limits RF power output when the mobile terminal is very close to the user, and yet permit the mobile terminal to operate without a power cap otherwise.

Broadly, there is disclosed herein a portable communication device operable to limit transmitter power if proximate a human body. The device includes a housing. A transmitter in the housing is connected to an antenna. A detector detects if the housing is proximate a human body. A control is operatively connected to the transmitter and to the detector. The control controls transmitter power and limits transmitter power if the detector detects that the housing is proximate a human body.

It is a feature of the invention that the transmitter is connected to the antenna through a circulator and the detector senses reflected power from the circulator.

It is another feature of the invention that the transmitter is connected to the antenna through a directional coupler and the detector measures voltage standing wave ratio using the directional coupler.

It is a further feature of the invention that the control comprises a programmed processor and the detector is implemented by the programmed processor.

It is yet another feature of the invention that the detector comprises a photo detector proximate an opening in the housing. The photo detector is proximate a speaker

PCT/US01/41059

WO 02/05443

opening in the housing so that if the device is in a "talk" position next to a user's head, then amount of light at the photo detector decreases.

It is still another feature of the invention that the detector comprises a touchsensitive detection circuit. The detection circuit comprises a conductive element proximate speaker openings in the housing so that if a device is in a "talk" position next to a user's head, then the conductive element is in contact with the user's head.

It is still a further feature of the invention that the portable communication device comprises an AMPS mobile terminal and the controller resets a mobile attenuation code if the detector detects that the housing is proximate a human body

It is still an additional feature of the invention that the control integrates transmitter power if the detector detects that the housing is proximate a human body and limits transmitter power after the integrated transmitter power exceeds a select threshold.

There is disclosed in accordance with another aspect of the invention a mobile terminal used in a wireless communication system and operable to limit transmitter power if proximate a human body. The mobile terminal includes a housing. A transmitter in the housing is connected to an antenna. The transmitter has a power control loop controlling transmitter power. A detector detects if the housing is proximate a human body. A control is operatively connected to the transmitter power control loop and to the detector, the control limiting transmitter power if the detector detects that the housing is proximate a human body. Further features and advantages of the invention will be readily apparent from the specification and from the drawings.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

Fig. 1 is a block diagram of a mobile terminal in accordance with the invention;

3

PCT/US01/41059

Fig. 2 is a general block diagram of the mobile terminal of Fig. 1 specifically illustrating the power limiting feature of the invention;

Fig. 3 is a flow diagram illustrating a program implemented in the processor of Fig. 1 for limiting transmitter power output;

Fig. 4 is a flow diagram illustrating a program implemented in the processor of Fig. 1, in accordance with an alternative embodiment of the invention, for limiting transmitter power output;

Fig. 5 is a block diagram, similar to Fig. 2, illustrating a detector according to a first embodiment of the invention;

Fig. 6 is a block diagram, similar to Fig. 2, illustrating a detector according to a second embodiment of the invention;

Fig. 7 is a front elevation view of a mobile terminal including a detector according to a third embodiment of the invention;

Fig. 8 is a sectional view taken along the line 8-8 of Fig. 7;

Fig. 9 is a front elevation view of a mobile terminal including a detector according to a fourth embodiment of the invention; and

Fig. 10 is a sectional view taken along the line 10-10 of Fig. 9.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

Fig. 1 is a block diagram of a typical mobile terminal shown generally at 10. The mobile terminal includes a housing 11, an antenna 12, a receiver 16, a transmitter 18, a speaker 20, a processor 22, a memory 24, a user interface 26 and a microphone 32. The antenna 12 is mounted to and can be extended from the housing 11. Alternatively, the antenna 12 could be internal to the housing 11. The antenna 12 is configured to send and receive radio signals between the mobile terminal 10 and a wireless network (not shown),

WO 02/05443 ·

such as a cellular communications system. The antenna 12 is connected to a duplex filter 14 which enables the receiver 16 and the transmitter 18 to receive and broadcast, respectively, on the same antenna 12. The receiver 16 demodulates, demultiplexes and decodes the radio signals into one or more channels. Such channels includes a control channel and a traffic channel for speech or data. The speech or data are delivered to the speaker 20 (or other output device, such as a modem or fax connector).

The receiver 16 delivers messages from the control channel to the processor 22. The processor 22 controls and coordinates the functioning of the mobile terminal 10 responsive to messages on the control channel using programs and data stored in the memory 24, so that the mobile terminal 10 can operate within the wireless network. The processor 22 also controls the operation of the mobile terminal 10 responsive to input from the user interface 26. The user interface 26 includes a keypad 28 as a user-input device and a display 30 to give the user information. Other devices are frequently included in the user interface 26, such as lights and special purpose buttons. The processor 22 controls the operations of the transmitter 18 and the receiver 16 over control lines 34 and 36, respectively, responsive to control messages and user input.

The microphone 32 (or other data input device) receives speech signal input and converts the input into analog electrical signals. The analog electrical signals are delivered to the transmitter 18. The transmitter 18 converts the analog electrical signals into digital data, encodes the data with error-detection and correction information and multiplexes this data with control messages from the processor 22. Alternatively, the mobile terminal 10 may be connected to a laptop computer or the like which transfers digital signals to the transmitter 18. The transmitter 18 modulates this combined data stream and broadcasts the resultant radio signals to the wireless network through the duplex filter 14 and the antenna 12.

WO 02/05443

PCT/US01/41059

١

In accordance with the invention, the mobile terminal 10 includes a proximity detector 38 for detecting if the housing 11, and thus antenna 12, is proximate a human body. The detector 38 is operatively connected to the processor 22. The processor 22 operates in accordance with a control program, as described more specifically below, to limit or cap transmitter power output if the antenna 12 is proximate a human body. Particularly, the power is capped, rather than reduced, so that a power control loop operates properly when the expected transmitter power falls below the cap even though the antenna 12 is proximate the user.

Referring to Fig. 2, a block diagram illustrates the power limiting aspect of the invention. Particularly, the transmitter 18 is expanded to generally illustrate a power control loop 40 for controlling transmitter power output. A baseband block 42 generates an RF signal to be transmitted. The RF signal is provided to an RF driver stage 44. The RF driver stage 44 supplies sufficient signal level to a power amplifier 46. The power amplifier 46 amplifies the signal and provides it to the antenna 12.

The driver stage 44 and power amplifier 46 are operatively connected to the processor 22. The processor 22 conventionally controls operation of the driver stage 44 and power amplifier 46 to control transmitter power output.

In an advanced mobile phone system (AMPS), for example, the base station with which the mobile terminal 10 is communicating transmits a mobile attenuation code (MAC) identifying one of eight power levels. The processor 22 controls the power control loop 40 so that power output satisfies the MAC.

In accordance with the invention, the processor 22 implements a logic function so that if the proximity detector 38 senses that the antenna 12 is proximate the user, then the processor 22 establishes a power level cap that the power amplifier 46 is not permitted to exceed. For example, in an AMPS mobile terminal, mobile attenuation codes 000, 001,

6

PCT/US01/41059

WO 02/05443

010 and 011 could be reset to 100 if the antenna 12 is near the user. This establishes a 100-milliwatt power cap on the power amplifier 46. The other mobile attenuation codes, i.e., 100, 101, 110 and 111, would be processed unaltered, regardless of proximity to the user, as the power output amounts generated from these codes are less than the cap.

As is apparent, the power limiting feature of the invention is not limited to AMPS mobile terminals. This feature can be used with other types of mobile terminals by limiting transmitter power output using codes or commands particular to the particular type mobile terminal.

In a first aspect of the invention, the processor 22 intervenes instantaneously in the power control loop 40. Thus, as soon as proximity is detected by the detector 38, then transmit power is capped. This is illustrated in the flow diagram of Fig. 3.

The flow diagram begins at a block 50 that checks proximity using the proximity detector 38. A decision block 52 determines if the antenna 12 is proximate a user. If not, then a decision block 54 determines if power was previously capped. If not, then control loops back to the block 50. If so, then the power cap is undone at a block 56 and control then loops back to the block 50.

If the antenna 12 is proximate the user, as determined at the decision block 52, then a decision block 58 determines if power is greater than a select threshold. The threshold can be a factory-set value or user-set value that defines the power cap. In the example discussed above, the threshold is 100 milliwatts, represented by MAC 100. If power is not greater than the threshold, then it is not necessary to limit or cap power output and control loops back to the block 50. If power is greater than the threshold, then power is capped at a block 60. The power is capped by reducing the power command signals to the driver stage 44 and/or the power amplifier 46, see Fig. 2. Control then loops back to the block 50.

WO 02/05443

)

PCT/US01/41059

١

In accordance with a second aspect of the invention power is integrated as by accumulating sample values over time before the processor 22 intervenes. In this aspect of the invention, energy, represented by power over a specified integration interval, is the driving factor rather than power. This aspect is illustrated by the flow diagram of Fig. 4.

The flow diagram begins at a block 70 which awaits transmitter activity along with a decision block 72. If there is no activity, then control continually loops between the block 70 and the decision block 72. If there is transmitter activity, then a block 74 starts a clock. The clock is used to set a specified integration interval. A block 76 performs the integration by accumulating the product of power and time. A decision block 78 determines if the accumulated amount is greater than a select threshold. If so, then power is capped at a block 80 and the routine ends. If the accumulated amount is not greater than the select threshold, then a decision block 82 determines if the transmitter is active. If not, then the clock and accumulator are reset at a block 84 and control loops back to the block 70. If the transmitter is active, then a decision block 86 determines if the loop has reached the end of a time-based interval. If not, then control loops back to block 76 to continue the integration function. If so, then the accumulator is reset at a block 88 and control loops back to the block 76 to begin another integration interval.

The block diagram of Fig. 2 is a functional diagram illustrating power limitation in accordance with the invention. Specific embodiments for detecting proximity are illustrated below relative to Figs. 5-10. Elements corresponding to those in Fig. 2 are identified with like reference numerals and are not described in detail.

Referring initially to Fig. 5, it is known that close proximity to the user's body detunes the mobile terminal's antenna 12. In this embodiment a circulator 90 is connected between the power amplifier 46 and the antenna 12. Reflected power from the circulator 90 is measured by the processor 22. The processor 22 compares reflected power with a

WO 02/05443 ·

select threshold. When reflected power exceeds the select threshold, then the processor 22 detects that the antenna 12 is proximate a human body.

Referring to Fig. 6, a functional block diagram illustrates a second embodiment for proximity detection. In the embodiment of Fig. 6, the power amplifier 46 is connected to the antenna 12 through directional couplers 92. The directional couplers are operatively connected to the processor 22. The processor 22 measures the voltage standing wave ratio (VSWR) using the directional couplers 92. When the VSWR exceeds a select threshold, then the processor 22 detects that the antenna 12 is proximate a human body. The VSWR is computed in accordance with the following:

$$VSWR = \frac{V_F + V_R}{V_F - V_R} = \frac{1 + \sqrt{\frac{P_R}{P_F}}}{1 - \sqrt{\frac{P_R}{P_F}}}$$

where V_F is forward voltage, V_R is reflected voltage, P_F is forward power and P_R is reflected power.

In either embodiment of Fig. 5 or Fig. 6, the processor 22 controls the power control loop 40 by establishing a power level cap that the power amplifier 46 is not permitted to exceed, as discussed above relative to Figs. 3 and 4.

Referring to Fig. 7, the mobile terminal housing 11 includes openings 94 for the speaker 20, see Fig. 1, and an opening 96 for a photodetector 98. As shown in Fig. 8, the speaker 20 and photo detector 98 are mounted to a printed circuit board 100 in the housing 11.

The photo detector 98 uses a photo-conductive element, such as cadmium selanide, whose electrical resistance decreases as incident illumination increases. The change in resistance can be detected by the processor 22, see Fig. 1, to function as a proximity detector.

WO 02/05443

)

PCT/US01/41059

)

The photo detector opening 96 allows light to pass through the housing 11 to the photo detector 98, as shown generally in Fig. 8. When the mobile terminal 10 is placed in the "talk" position next to the user's head, then the amount of light to the photo detector 98 decreases. The detection of this decrease in light, representing proximity of the housing 11 to a human body, can be used by the processor 22 to cap or limit output power, as discussed above. With the exception of total darkness, there is always a decrease in light when the phone is placed next to the user's head. As is apparent, if the housing 11 is proximate the user's head, then the antenna 12 is also proximate the user's head.

Alternatively, the embodiment of Fig. 7 may be operable to detect the presence of a user by incorporating a photo-conductive element that is sensitive to infrared, i.e., the thermal output of a user.

Referring to Figs. 9 and 10, the mobile terminal 10 uses proximity detection in accordance with a fourth embodiment of the invention. The housing includes a conductive element 102 surrounding the speaker openings 94. In the illustrated embodiment of the invention, the conductive element 102 is a metallic ring. The ring 102 is connected to a touch-sensitive detection circuit 104 mounted on the printed circuit board 100. When the mobile terminal 10 is placed in the "talk" position next to the user's head, then the metallic ring 102 comes in contact with the user's ear. The touch-sensitive detection circuit 104 senses this change in contact and sends a signal to the processor 22 for capping or limiting power output, as discussed above.

Thus, in accordance with the invention a proximity detector and logic functions are used for capping or limiting transmitted power output responsive to an indication of close proximity to a human body

PCT/US01/41059

CLAIMS

WE CLAIM:

1. A portable communication device operable to limit transmitter power if proximate a human body, comprising:

an antenna;

a transmitter connected to the antenna;

a detector for detecting if the antenna is proximate a human body; and

a control operatively connected to the transmitter and to the detector, the control controlling transmitter power and limiting transmitter power if the detector detects that the antenna is proximate a human body.

2. The portable communication device of claim 1 wherein the transmitter is connected to the antenna through a circulator and the detector senses reflected power from the circulator.

3. The portable communication device of claim 1 wherein the transmitter is connected to the antenna through a directional coupler and the detector measures voltage standing wave ratio using the directional coupler.

4. The portable communication device of claim 1 wherein the control comprises a programmed processor and the detector is implemented by the programmed processor.

5. The portable communication device of claim 1 further comprising a housing and wherein the detector comprises a photo detector proximate an opening in the housing.

)

PCT/US01/41059

1

6. The portable communication device of claim 5 wherein the photo detector is proximate a speaker opening in the housing so that if the device is in a talk position next to a users head, then amount of light at the photo detector decreases.

7. The portable communication device of claim 1 further comprising a housing and wherein the detector comprises a touch-sensitive detection circuit.

8. The portable communication device of claim 7 wherein the detection circuit comprises a conductive element proximate speaker openings so that if the device is in a talk position next to a users head, then the conductive element is in contact with the users head.

9. The portable communication device of claim 1 wherein the portable communication device comprises a cellular mobile terminal and the control resets a mobile attenuation code if the detector detects that the antenna is proximate a human body.

10. The portable communication device of claim 1 wherein the control integrates transmitter power if the detector detects that the antenna is proximate a human body and limits transmitter power after the integrated transmitter power exceeds a select threshold.

11. A mobile terminal used in a wireless communication system and operable to limit transmitter power if proximate a human body, comprising:

an antenna;

a housing;

PCT/US01/41059

WO 02/05443

a transmitter in the housing connected to the antenna, the transmitter having a power control loop controlling transmitter power;

a detector for detecting if the antenna is proximate a human body; and

a control operatively connected to the transmitter power control loop and to the detector, the control limiting transmitter power if the detector detects that the antenna is proximate a human body.

12. The mobile terminal of claim 11 wherein the transmitter is connected to the antenna through a circulator and the detector senses reflected power from the circulator.

13. The mobile terminal of claim 11 wherein the transmitter is connected to the antenna through a directional coupler and the detector measures voltage standing wave ratio using the directional coupler.

14. The mobile terminal of claim 11 wherein the control comprises a programmed processor and the detector is implemented by the programmed processor.

15. The mobile terminal of claim 11 wherein the detector comprises a photo detector proximate an opening in the housing.

16. The mobile terminal of claim 15 wherein the photo detector is proximate a speaker opening in the housing so that if the device is in a talk position next to a user's head, then amount of light at the photo detector decreases.

17. The mobile terminal of claim 11 wherein the detector comprises a touch-sensitive detection circuit.

)

PCT/US01/41059

)

18. The mobile terminal of claim 17 wherein the detection circuit comprises a conductive element proximate speaker openings in the housing so that if the device is in a talk position next to a users head, then the conductive element is in contact with the users head.

19. The mobile terminal of claim 11 wherein the mobile terminal comprises a cellular mobile terminal and the control resets a mobile attenuation code if the detector detects that the antenna is proximate a human body.

20. The mobile terminal of claim 11 wherein the control integrates transmitter power if the detector detects that the antenna is proximate a human body and limits transmitter power after the integrated transmitter power exceeds a select threshold.

WO 02/05443

)

PCT/US01/41059

~)



FIG. 1



)

WO 02/05443

.)

PCT/US01/41059







WO 02/05443

)

PCT/US01/41059

)









WO 02/05443 ...

PCT/US01/41059

)



FIG. 6



FIG. 7



FIG. 8







FIG. 10

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

_____ }

•

)

÷

÷,

.

.

.

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization International Bureau



РСТ

- (51) International Patent Classification7: H04B 1/38
- (21) International Application Number: PCT/US01/41059
- (22) International Filing Date: 20 June 2001 (20.06.2001)
- (25) Filing Language: English
- (26) Publication Language: English
- (30) Priority Data: 09/612.034 7 July 2000 (07.07.2000) US
- (71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): ERICS-SON INC. [US/US]; 7001 Development Drive. Research Triangle Park, NC 27709 (US).
- (72) Inventors; and
- (75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): IRVIN, David, R. [US/US]; 1546 Iredell Drive, Raleigh, NC 27608 (US). RYDBECK, Nils [SE/US]; 207 Rutherglen, Cary, NC

(10) International Publication Number WO 02/05443 A3

27511 (US). HAYES, Gerard, J. [US/US]; 207 Lilliput Lane, Wake Forest, NC 27587 (US).

(74) Agents: BENNETT, David, E. et al.; Coats & Bennett, PLLC, Post Office Box 5, Raleigh, NC 27602 (US).

١

- (81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.
- (84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW). Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT. SE, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

[Continued on next page]



(43) International Publication Date 17 January 2002 (17.01.2002)

,

WO 02/05443 A3

`)

.

Published:

--- with international search report

(88) Date of publication of the international search report: 27 June 2002

).

.

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette. .

.

	<i>C</i>)	
	INTERNATIONAL SEARCH	REPORT	Inter 'onal Appl	ication No
			PC1/US 01/	41059
IPC 7 According to 3. FIELDS 5 Minimum doc IPC 7	H04B1/38 International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classific SEARCHED cumentation searched (classification system followed by classificat H04B on searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that	cation and IPC ion symbols) such documents are inc	luded in the fields se	arched
EPO-Int	ala base consulted during the international search (name of data base consulted by ternal, WPI Data	ase ano, where practica	a, search lenns used	,
Calegory ~	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the re-	elevant passages		Relevant to claim No.
X	US 5 949 369 A (BRADLEY JAMES FR ET AL) 7 September 1999 (1999-09	EDERICK -07)		1-5, 9-15,19,
A	abstract column 4, line 52 -column 6, lin column 8, line 8 -column 9, line	ne 35 2 45		20 6-8, 16-18
A	column 13, line 53 -column 14, l figures 6,11-13 WO 95 03549 A (QUALCOMM INC) 2 February 1995 (1995-02-02) abstract page 2, line 27 -page 6, line 8 figure 2	ine 21		1-20
		-/		
X Fur	her documents are listed in the continuation of box C.	X Patent fami	ily members are listed	d in annex.
 Special ca A' docume consi E' earlier filing L' docume which citatic O' docume other P' docume later 	ategories of cited documents : ent defining the general state of the art which is not dered to be of particular relevance document but published on or after the international date ent which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or is cited to establish the publication date of another on or other special reason (as specified) nent referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or means ent published prior to the international filing date but than the priority date claimed	 'T' later document p or priority date a cited to underst invention 'X' document of part cannot be cons involve an inver 'Y' document of part cannot be cons document is co ments, such co in the art. '&' document memt 	ublished after the int and not in conflict will and the principle or the ticular relevance; the iddered novel or cannen live step when the d ticular relevance; the iddered to involve an i mbined with one or m mbination being obvi- ber of the same paten	ternational filing date In the application but heory underlying the claimed invention to be considered to ocument is taken alone claimed invention nventive step when the hore other such docu- ous to a person skilled at family
Date of the	actual completion of the international search	Date of mailing	of the international se	earch report
	25 January 2002	31/01/	2002	

Form PCT/ISA/210 (second sheet) (July 1992)

•

,•

page 1 of 2

	INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT	Interr onal Application No	
		PCT/US 01/41059	
C.(Continu			
Jalegory *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.	
A	EP 0 752 735 A (DEUTSCHE TELEKOM MOBIL) 8 January 1997 (1997-01-08) abstract	1-20	
	claims 5,6,8		

1

-				P	U1/US	01/41059
Patent document cited in search report		Publication date		Patent family member(s)		Publication date
US 5949369	A	07-09-1999	WO	9829968	A2	09-07-1998
WO 9503549	A	02-02-1995	AT AU AU BR DE DE DE ES FI GR HJP SG SI WO	161970 679256 7475094 9407102 1127552 69407797 69407797 711417 0711417 2111320 960212 3026294 1003600 3165155 9500728 2148834 49309 711417 9503549	T B2 A A A D1 T2 T3 A1 T3 A1 T3 A1 B2 T C1 A1 T1 A1	15-01-1998 26-06-1997 20-02-1995 27-08-1996 24-07-1996 12-02-1998 06-08-1998 07-09-1998 15-05-1996 30-06-1998 30-10-1998 14-05-2001 21-01-1997 10-05-2000 18-05-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-06-1998 30-08-1998
EP 0752735	A	08-01-1997	DE AT DE EP ES	19524288 198012 59606178 0752735 2154364	C1 T D1 A1 T3	06-03-199 15-12-200 11-01-200 08-01-199 01-04-200
·						

٠.

,

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

Cp2643 41

O 1 PARTFORNEY DO	OCKET NO. R.L. MCDO	WELL 20-76	PATENT
(WI 1 8 2004 E IN TI	HE UNITED STATES PA	TENT AND TRADEMARK OF	FICE
TRADE TRADE Cant:	Richard L. McDowell	, et al.	
Serial No.:	09/967,140		
Filed:	September 28, 2001		
Title:	A PROXIMITY REGUCELL PHONE AND	JLATION SYSTEM FOR USE WI A METHOD OF OPERATION TH	TH A PORTABLE IEREOF
Grp./A.U.:	2643	RE	
Examiner:	Thai Vu	Techno	logy Center 2600
	_		

Commissioner for Patents P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, VA 22313-1450

I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United St first class mail in an envelope addressed to: Commissioner for Patents, Alex.	ates Postal Service a indria, VA 22313, or
Irst class mail is an envelope addressed to: Commissioner for Patents, Alexa <u> 11/15/04</u> (Date) 0.0000000000000000000000000000000000	ndria, VA 22313, o
Der 2000 Contraction	and the second
Darma Ca	
Printed or typed name of person signing the certificate)	Contraction of the second
Thinked of typed matter of person signal die centilieate)	Sec. March
A alla man	S. Harrison Sec.
Signature of the nerron coming the certificate)	

Sir:

۲ د ب

.

•

AMENDMENT UNDER 37 C.F.R. § 1.111

The Applicants have carefully considered this application in connection with the Examiner's Action mailed August 13, 2004, and respectfully request reconsideration of this application in view of the following amendment and remarks.

IN THE CLAIMS:

1. (Currently Amended) For use with a portable cell phone, a proximity regulation system, comprising:

a location sensing subsystem configured to determine a location of said portable cell phone with respect to a portion of a body of proximate a user; and

a power governing subsystem, coupled to said location sensing subsystem, configured to determine a proximity transmit power level of said portable cell phone based on said location.

2. (Currently Amended) The proximity regulation system as recited in Claim 1 wherein said proximity transmit power level is reduced <u>to one level</u> when said location is within a vicinity of a user's head <u>and reduced to a second level when said location is within a vicinity of a user's midsection</u>.

3. (Original) The proximity regulation system as recited in Claim 1 wherein said proximity transmit power level is limited to a predetermined maximum level.

4. (Original) The proximity regulation system as recited in Claim 1 wherein said proximity transmit power level is maximum when said portable cell phone is operating in a headset operation mode or data transfer operation mode.

 (Original) The proximity regulation system as recited in Claim 1 wherein said portable cell phone is located on a belt-clip of said user.

6. (Original) The proximity regulation system as recited in Claim 1 wherein said location sensing subsystem or said power governing subsystem is embodied in an integrated circuit.

-2-

7. (Original) The proximity regulation system as recited in Claim 1 wherein said location sensing subsystem or said power governing subsystem is embodied in a sequence of operating instructions.

8. (Original) The proximity regulation system as recited in Claim 1 wherein said location sensing subsystem determines said location by employing a sensor selected from the group consisting of:

a designated sensor,

a contact sensor,

•

.

a belt clip sensor, and

a cradle sensor.

9. (Original) The proximity regulation system as recited in Claim 1 wherein said location sensing subsystem determines said location by ascertaining a mode of operation of said portable cell phone.

10. (Currently Amended) A method of operating a portable cell phone, comprising:determining a location of said portable cell phone with respect to a portion of a body

of proximate a user;

providing a control signal based on said location; and

determining a proximity transmit power level of said portable cell phone based on said control signal.

11. (Currently Amended) The method as recited in Claim 10 wherein said proximity transmit power level is reduced to one level when said location is within a vicinity of a user's head and reduced to a second level when said location is within a vicinity of a user's midsection.

-3-

12. (Original) The method as recited in Claim 10 wherein said proximity transmit power level is limited to a predetermined maximum level.

13. (Original) The method as recited in Claim 10 wherein said proximity transmit power level is maximum when said portable cell phone is operating in a headset operation mode or data transfer operation mode.

14. (Original) The method as recited in Claim 10 wherein said portable cell phone is located on a belt-clip of said user.

15. (Original) The method as recited in Claim 10 wherein said determining said location is performed by a location sensing subsystem embodied in an integrated circuit.

16. (Original) The method as recited in Claim 10 wherein said determining a proximity transmit power level is performed by a power governing subsystem embodied in a sequence of operating instructions.

17. (Original) The method as recited in Claim 10 wherein said determining a location employs a sensor selected from the group consisting of:

a designated sensor,

a contact sensor,

. '

a belt clip sensor, and

a cradle sensor.

18. (Original) The method as recited in Claim 10 wherein said determining a location is performed by ascertaining a mode of operation of said portable cell phone.

-4-

19. (Currently Amended) A portable cell phone, comprising:

.

a power circuit that provides a network adjusted transmit power level as a function of a position to a communications tower; and

a proximity regulation system, including:

a location sensing subsystem that determines a location of said portable cell phone proximate a user; and

a power governing subsystem, coupled to said location sensing subsystem, that determines a proximity transmit power level of said portable cell phone based on said location<u>and</u> <u>determines a transmit power level for said portable cell phone based on said network adjusted</u> <u>transmit power level and said proximity transmit power level</u>.

20. (Currently Amended) The portable cell phone as recited in Claim 19 wherein <u>said</u> <u>location sensing subsystem determines said location with respect to a portion of a body of said user</u> proximity transmit power level is reduced when said location is within a vicinity of a user's head.

21. (Original) The portable cell phone as recited in Claim 19 wherein said proximity transmit power level is limited to a predetermined maximum level.

22. (Original) The portable cell phone as recited in Claim 19 wherein said proximity transmit power level is maximum when said portable cell phone is operating in a headset operation mode or data transfer operation mode.

23. (Original) The portable cell phone as recited in Claim 19 wherein said portable cell phone is located on a belt-clip of said user.

24. (Original) The portable cell phone as recited in Claim 19 wherein said location sensing subsystem or said power governing subsystem is embodied in an integrated circuit.

25. (Currently Amended) The portable cell phone as recited in Claim 19 wherein said proximity transmit power level is reduced to one level when said location is within a vicinity of a user's head and reduced to a second level when said location is within a vicinity of a user's midsection location sensing subsystem or said power governing subsystem is embodied in a sequence of operating instructions.

26. (Original) The portable cell phone as recited in Claim 19 wherein said location sensing subsystem determines said location by employing a sensor selected from the group consisting of:

a designated sensor,

a contact sensor,

• •

a belt clip sensor, and

a cradle sensor.

27. (Original) The portable cell phone as recited in Claim 19 wherein said location sensing subsystem determines said location by ascertaining a mode of operation of said portable cell phone.

-6-

REMARKS/ARGUMENTS

The Applicants originally submitted Claims 1-27 in the application. The Applicants have amended Claims 1-2, 10-11, 19-20 and 25. No claims have been canceled or added. Accordingly, Claims 1-27 are currently pending in the application.

I. Rejection of Claims 1-3, 6-7, 9-12, 15-16 and 18 under 35 U.S.C. §102

The Examiner has rejected Claims 1-3, 6-7, 9-12, 15-16 and 18 under 35 U.S.C. §102(b) as being anticipated by U.S. Patent No. 6,456,856 to Werling, *et al.* The Applicants respectfully disagree.

Werling is directed to minimizing radio wave exposure to users of radio communication apparatuses. (*See* column 1, line 65 to column 2, line 12.) Werling does not teach, however, a portable cell phone that determines a location of the portable cell phone with respect to a portion of a body of a user as recited in independent Claims 1 and 10. On the contrary, Werling simply determines if a radio communication apparatus is proximate to human tissue. (*See* column 3, lines 1-8.) The Applicants do not find where Werling determines location of the radio communication apparatus with respect to a portion of a user's body. Werling, therefore, does not teach each element of independent Claims 1 and 10.

Since Werling does not disclose each and every element of independent Claims 1 and 10, Werling does not anticipate Claims 1 and 10 and Claims dependent thereon. Accordingly, the Applicants respectfully request the Examiner to withdraw the §102 rejection with respect to Claims 1-3, 6-7, 9-12, 15-16 and 18 and allow issuance thereof.

II. Rejection of Claims 4-5, 8, 13-14 and 17 under 35 U.S.C. §103

The Examiner has rejected Claims 4-5, 8, 13-14 and 17 under 35 U.S.C. §103(a) as being unpatentable over Werling in view of the following U.S. Patents: U.S. Patent No. 6, 195,562 to Pirhonen for Claims 4 and 13; U.S. Patent No. 6,408,187 to Merriam for Claims 5 and 14; and Merriam in further view of U.S. Patent No. 4,636,741 to Mitzlaff for Claims 8 and 17. The Applicants respectfully disagree.

As discussed above, Werling does not teach a portable cell phone that determines a location of the portable cell phone with respect to a portion of a body of a user as recited in independent Claims 1 and 10. Additionally, Werling does not suggest a portable cell phone that determines a location of the portable cell phone with respect to a portion of a body of a user since Werling simply addresses determining proximity of a radio communications device to human tissue. (*See* column 3, lines 1-8.)

Each of the references, Pirhonen, Merriam and Mitzlaff, have been cited to disclose the subject matter of a dependent Claim. The Applicants do not find, however, where any of the references Pirhonen, Merriam and Mitzlaff teach or suggest a portable cell phone that determines a location of the portable cell phone with respect to a portion of a body of a user. The cited references, therefore, do not teach each element of independent Claims 1 and 10 and Claims dependent thereon. Accordingly, the cited references do not provide a *prima facie* case of obviousness for Claims 4-5, 8, 13-14 and 17 which depend on Claims 1 or 10, respectively. Thus, the Applicants respectfully request the Examiner withdraw the §103(a) rejection of Claims 4-5, 8, 13-14 and 17 and allow issuance thereof.
III. Rejection of Claims 19-21, 24-25 and 27 under 35 U.S.C. §103

.

The Examiner has rejected Claims 19-21, 24-25 and 27 under 35 U.S.C. §103(a) as being unpatentable over Werling in view of U.S. Patent No. 6, 498,924 to Vogel, *et al.*195,562. The Applicants respectfully disagree.

As recognized by the Examiner, Werling does not teach or suggest a portable cell phone including a power circuit that provides a network adjusted transmit power level as a function of a position to a communications tower as recited in independent Claim 19. Thus, the Examiner cites Vogel to cure this deficiency of Werling. (*See* Examiner's Action, page 7.)

Vogel provides mobile radio communications systems and an apparatus for measuring the distance or the propagation time between a mobile station and a base station in such a system. (*See* column 2, lines 15-32.) Vogel provides no teaching or suggestion, however, of a power circuit that provides a network adjusted transmit power level as a function of a position to a communications tower. Instead, Vogel is directed to improving the accuracy of determining the distance and propagation. (*See* column 2, lines 1-14.) Vogel does teach in the background that the distance and propagation measurements may be used for various purposes. Vogel provides no teaching or suggestion, however, that the purpose may be for providing a power level for transmitting.

Accordingly, neither Werling nor Vogel, individually or in combination, teach or suggest a power circuit that provides a network adjusted transmit power level as a function of a position to a communications tower. Thus, neither Werling or Vogel, individually or in combination, teach or suggest a power governing subsystem that determines a transmit power level for a portable cell phone based on a network adjusted transmit power level and a proximity transmit power level as recited in Claim 19. The cited combination of Werling and Vogel, therefore, does not provide a

prima facie case of obviousness of independent Claim 19 and Claims dependent thereon. Thus, the cited combination of Werling and Vogel does not render unpatentable Claims 19-21, 24-25 and 27. Accordingly, the Applicants respectfully request the Examiner withdraw the §103(a) rejection of Claims 19-21, 24-25 and 27 and allow issuance thereof.

IV. Rejection of Claims 22, 23 and 26 under 35 U.S.C. §103

The Examiner has rejected Claims 22, 23 and 26 under 35 U.S.C. §103(a) as being unpatentable over Werling in view of Vogel and the following U.S. Patents to Pirhonen for Claim 22, to Merriam for Claim 23 and Merriam in further view of Mitzlaff for Claim 26. The Applicants respectfully disagree.

As discussed above, the combination of Werling and Vogel does not teach or suggest each element of independent Claim 19. Each of the references, Pirhonen, Merriam and Mitzlaff, have not been cited to cure the above deficiency of Werling and Vogel but to disclose the subject matter of a dependent claim. The Applicants do not find, however, where any of the references Pirhonen, Merriam and Mitzlaff teach or suggest a portable cell phone including a power circuit that provides a network adjusted transmit power level as a function of a position to a communications tower and a proximity regulation system including a power governing subsystem that determines a transmit power level for the portable cell phone based on the network adjusted transmit power level and a proximity transmit power level. The cited references, therefore, do not teach each element of independent Claim 19 and Claims dependent thereon. Accordingly, the cited references do not provide a *prima facie* case of obviousness for Claims 22, 23 and 26 which depend on Claim 19.

-10-

Thus, the Applicants respectfully request the Examiner withdraw the §103(a) rejection of Claims 22, 23 and 26 and allow issuance thereof.

V. Conclusion

In view of the foregoing amendment and remarks, the Applicants now see all of the Claims currently pending in this application to be in condition for allowance and therefore earnestly solicit a Notice of Allowance for Claims 1-27.

The Applicants request the Examiner to telephone the undersigned attorney of record at (972) 480-8800 if such would further or expedite the prosecution of the present application.

Respectfully submitted,

HITT GAINES, P.C.

ustis gistration No. 48,981 Re

Dated:

P.O. Box 832570 Richardson, Texas 75083 (972) 480-8800

-11-

								-		_		
Application or Docket Number												
Effective October 1, 2000 R.L. MCOWELL-Jo-78												
		CLAIMS AS	G FILED - (Column	PART (l (Colu	nn 2)	SM TY			OR	OTHER SMALL I	THAN ENTITY
тс	TAL CLAIMS		27	-				RATE	FEE		RATE	FEE
FO	R		NUMBER	FILED	NUMB	ER EXTRA	BA	SIC FEE	355.00	OR	BASIC FEE	710.00
то	TAL CHARGEA	BLE CLAIMS	J.fmin	us 20=	• 7			X\$ 9=		OR	X\$18=	125
IND	EPENDENT CL	AIMS	, S mi	nus 3 =	·ψ			X40=		OR	X80=	
MU	LTIPLE DEPEN	DENT CLAIM P	RESENT					135=		OR	+270=	
• If	the difference i	in column 1 is	less than ze	ro, enter	"0" in c	olumn 2	Ţ	OTAL		OR	TOTAL	736
11	18 04 CI	LAIMS AS A	MENDED	- PAR	T nn 2)	(Column 3)	s	MALL		OR	OTHER SMALL E	THAN
ENTA		CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		HIGH NUM PREVIC PAID	est Ber Dusly For	PRESENT EXTRA	ſ	ATE	ADDI- TIONAL FEE		RATE	ADDI- TIONAL FEE
MON	Total	• ସୀ	Minus	•• ĉ	27	=Ø	,	(\$ 9=		OR	X\$18=	
ME	Independent	· 3	Minus	***	3	=Ø		X40=		OR	X80=	
-	FIRST PRESE	NTATION OF M				T,	-135=		OR	+270=		
								TOTAL		OR	TOTAL	
		(Column 1)		(Colu	mn 2)	(Column 3)	ADI	DIT. FEE			AUDII. FEEI	
ENT B		CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		HIGH NUM PREVIO PAID	iest Ber Ously For	PRESENT EXTRA	ſ	AATE	ADDI- TIONAL FEE		RATE	ADDI- TIONAL FEE
MON	Total	•	Minus	••		=)	(\$ 9=		OR	X\$18=	
AME	Independent	•	Minus	***		=		X40=		OR	X80=	
Ľ	FIRST PRESE	NTATION OF M	ULTIPLE DEF	ENDEN	CLAIM			135=		OR	+270=	
								TOTAL		OR	TOTAL ADDIT. FEE	
		(Column 1)		(Colu	mn 2)	(Column 3)				_		
ENT C		CLAIMS REMAINING AFTER AMENDMENT		High NUM PREVI PAID	iest Ber Ously For	PRESENT	F	RATE	ADDI- TIONAL FEE		RATE	ADDI- TIONAL FEE
NDN	Total	•	Minus	••		-		(\$ 9=		OR	X\$18=	7
ME	Independent	•	Minus	•••		l=		(40=		OR	X80=	
Ľ	FIRST PRESE	NTATION OF M	ULTIPLE DEI	ENDEN	I CLAIM			125-			1270-	
	If the entry in colur	mn 1 is less than t	he entry in colu	ımn 2, writ	e "0" in coi	lumn 3.	Ľ	TOTAL		OR	TOTAL	
	If the "Highest Nur If the "Highest Nur	mber Previously P mber Previously P	aid For" IN TH	S SPACE	is less that is less that	n 20, enter "20." In 3, enter "3."	ADI	OIT. FEE		OR	ADDIT. FEE	<u> </u>
	The Highest Num	ber Previously Pa	id For" (Total o	r Independ	lent) is the	highest numbe	r found	in the app	propriate bo	x in co	lumn 1.	
								-			-	

. •

"U.S. GPO: 2000-460-708/30103

	UNITED STATES PA	ATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFICE	UNITED STATES DEPAR	TMENT OF COMMERCE
A CANE			Address: COMMISSIONER F P.O. Box 1450 Alexandria, Virginia 22; www.uspto.gov	OR PATENTS
APPLICATION	NO. FILING DATE	FIRST NAMED INVENTOR	ATTORNEY DOCKET NO.	CONFIRMATION NO.
09/967,140	09/28/2001	Richard L. McDowell	R.L. MCDOWELL 20-76	4925
27964	7590 08/13/	/2004	EXAM	INER
HITT G P O BO	HITT GAINES P.C.			THAI .
RICHAI	RDSON, TX 75083		ART UNIT	PAPER NUMBER
-	-		2643	5
			DATE MAILED: 08/13/200	4 /

Please find below and/or attached an Office communication concerning this application or proceeding.

.

.

PTO-90C (Rev. 10/03)

		Applicatio	on No.	Applicant(s)
, '	•	09/967,14	0	MCDOWELL ET AL.
	Office Action Summary	Examiner		Art Unit
		Thai Vu		2643 .
	The MAILING DATE of this com	nunication appears on the	cover sheet with the	correspondence address
Period fo	er Reply			
A SH THE I - Exter - If the - If the - If NO - Failu Any r earne	ORTENED STATUTORY PERIO MAILING DATE OF THIS COMM isions of time may be available under the provi SIX (6) MONTHS from the mailing date of this period for reply specified above is less than thi period for reply is specified above, the maximu- re to reply within the set or extended period for reply received by the Office later than three mo- ad patent term adjustment. See 37 CFR 1.704	D F.OR REPLY IS SET T UNICATION. sions of 37 CFR 1.136(a). In no eve communication. try (30) days, a reply within the statu m statutory period will apply and wi reply will, by statute, cause the appl nths after the mailing date of this con b).	O EXPIRE <u>3</u> MONTH int, however, may a reply be ti itory minimum of thirty (30) da l expire SIX (6) MONTHS fron ication to become ABANDONI mmunication, even if timely file	(S) FROM mely filed ys will be considered timely. n the mailing date of this communication. ED (35 U.S.C. § 133). d, may reduce any
Status				
1)⊠	Responsive to communication(s) filed on 28 September 2	001.	
2a)	This action is FINAL .	2b) This action is n	on-final.	
3)	Since this application is in condit	ion for allowance except	for formal matters, pr	osecution as to the merits is
	closed in accordance with the pr	actice under Ex parte Qu	<i>ayle</i> , 1935 C.D. 11, 4	53 O.G. 213.
Dispositi	on of Claims			
4)⊠	Claim(s) 1-27 is/are pending in t	he application.		
/_	4a) Of the above claim(s)	is/are withdrawn from co	nsideration.	
5)	Claim(s) is/are allowed.			
6)🖂	Claim(s) 1-27 is/are rejected.			
7)	Claim(s) is/are objected to	D.		
8)	Claim(s) are subject to re	striction and/or election re	equirement.	
Applicati	on Papers			
9)	The specification is objected to b	v the Examiner.		
10)	The drawing(s) filed on is/	are: a) accepted or b)	objected to by the	Examiner.
	Applicant may not request that any	objection to the drawing(s) b	e held in abeyance. Se	e 37 CFR 1.85(a).
	Replacement drawing sheet(s) inclu	ding the correction is require	ed if the drawing(s) is of	pjected to. See 37 CFR 1.121(d).
11)	The oath or declaration is objected	ed to by the Examiner. No	te the attached Office	e Action or form PTO-152.
Priority ι	Inder 35 U.S.C. § 119			
12)	Acknowledgment is made of a cla	aim for foreign priority und	der 35 U.S.C. § 119(a	a)-(d) or (f).
a)[] All b)∏ Some * c)∏ None o	of:		
	1. Certified copies of the price	rity documents have bee	n received.	
	2. Certified copies of the price	rity documents have bee	n received in Applicat	lion No
	3. Copies of the certified cop	ies of the priority docume	ents have been receiv	ed in this National Stage
	application from the Intern	ational Bureau (PCT Rule	e 17.2(a)).	
* 8	See the attached detailed Office a	ction for a list of the certi	fied copies not receiv	ed.
Attachmen	t(s)			
1) 🛛 Notic	e of References Cited (PTO-892)		4) 🛄 Interview Summar	y (PTO-413)
2) D Notic	e of Draftsperson's Patent Drawing Revie	ew (PTO-948)	Paper No(s)/Mail C	Date
 Information Paper 	nation Disclosure Statement(s) (PTO-144 r No(s)/Mail Date 4.	19 or PTO/SB/08)	6) Other:	Faterit Application (PTO-152)
S. Patent and T	rademark Office			
TOL-326 (R	ev. 1-04)	Office Action Summa	ry	Part of Paper No /Mail Date !

DETAILED ACTION

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 102

1. The following is a quotation of the appropriate paragraphs of 35

U.S.C. 102 that form the basis for the rejections under this section made in this

Office action:

. .

A person shall be entitled to a patent unless -

(e) the invention was described in (1) an application for patent, published under section 122(b), by another filed in the United States before the invention by the applicant for patent or (2) a patent granted on an application for patent by another filed in the United States before the invention by the applicant for patent, except that an international application filed under the treaty defined in section 351(a) shall have the effects for purposes of this subsection of an application filed in the United States only if the international application designated the United States and was published under Article 21(2) of such treaty in the English language.

2. Claims 1-3, 6-7, 9-12, 15-16 and 18 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 102(e)

as being anticipated by Werling et al. (U.S. Patent #: 6,456,856; hereinafter

"Werling").

Regarding claim 1, Werling teaches a system for use with a portable cell

phone, a proximity regulation system (FIG. 1), comprising:

a location sensing subsystem configured to determine a location of said

portable cell phone proximate a user (i.e. the proximity detector noted in FIG. 1,

block 18; column 3, lines 1-14); and

a power governing subsystem, coupled to said location sensing subsystem, configured to determine a proximity transmit power level of said portable cell phone based on said location (FIG. 1, block 17; column 3, lines 15-18).

Regarding claim 2, Werling teaches limitations of the claim in column 3, lines 1-14 (i.e. power is reduced when phones used close to human body including head).

Regarding claim 3, Werling teaches limitations of the claim in column 4, lines 36-60 (i.e. P_{MAX}).

Regarding claim 6, Werling further teaches limitations of the claim in

FIG.1, block 17 and column 2, lines 54-66 (i.e. Micro controllers which are widely available as integrated circuits).

Regarding claim 7, Werling further teaches limitations of the claim in FIG. 4 and column 4, lines 40-60.

Regarding claim 9, Werling further teaches limitations of the claim in column 3, lines 1-14.

Regarding claim 10, Werling teaches a method of operating a portable cell phone, comprising:

determining a location of said portable cell phone proximate a user (i.e. based on temperature and humidity, the proximity can be determined, column 3, lines 1-14);

providing a control signal based on said location (i.e. control signal provided by a microcontroller in FIG. 1, column 3 lines 15-18); and

determining a proximity transmit power level of said portable cell phone based on said control signal (FIG. 1 block 16, column 3, lines 15-18).

Regarding claim 11, Werling teaches limitations of the claim in column 3,

lines 1-14 (i.e. power is reduced when phones used close to human body including head).

Regarding claim 12, Werling teaches limitations of the claim in column 4,

lines 36-60 (i.e. P_{MAX}).

Regarding claim 15, Werling further teaches limitations of the claim in

FIG.1, block 17 and column 2, lines 54-66 (i.e. Micro controllers which are widely

available as integrated circuits).

Regarding claim 16, Werling further teaches limitations of the claim in FIG.

4 and column 4, lines 40-60.

Regarding claim 18, Werling further teaches limitations of the claim in

column 3, lines 1-14.

Claim Rejections - 35 USC § 103

The following is a quotation of 35 U.S.C. 103(a) which forms the basis for

all obviousness rejections set forth in this Office action:

(a) A patent may not be obtained though the invention is not identically disclosed or described as set forth in section 102 of this title, if the differences between the subject matter sought to be patented and the prior art are such that the subject matter as a whole would have been obvious at the time the invention was made to a person having ordinary skill in the art to which said subject matter pertains. Patentability shall not be negatived by the manner in which the invention was made.

4. Claims 4 and 13 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being

unpatentable over Werling (U.S. Patent #: 6,456,856) in view of Pirhonen et al.

(US Patent #: 6,195,562; hereinafter "Pirhonen").

Regarding claims 4 and 13, Werling teaches all subject matter as claimed above except for proximity transmit power level being maximum when said portable cell phone is operating in a headset operation mode or data transfer operation mode. However, Pirhonen teaches such limitations in column 2, lines 29-37 for the purpose of achieving high speed data transmission.

Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to incorporate the use of proximity transmit power level being maximum when said portable cell phone is operating in a data transfer operation mode, as taught by Pirhonen, in view of Werling, in order to achieve high speed data transmission.

 Claims 5 and 14 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Werling (U.S. Patent #: 6,456,856) in view of Merriam (U.S. Patent #: 6,408,187; hereinafter "Merriam").

Regarding claims 5 and 14, Werling teaches all subject matter as claimed above except for portable cell phone being located on a belt-clip of the user. However, Merriam teaches such limitations in column 3, lines 36-49 for the purpose of indicating whether the device within relatively close proximity to a user.

Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the inventions was made to incorporate the use of portable cell phone being located on a belt-clip of the user, as taught by Merriam, in view of Werling, in order to determine the behavior of the communications device.

Page 5

 Claims 8 and 17 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Werling et al. (U.S. Patent #: 6,456,856) in view of Merriam (U.S. Patent #: 6,408,187) and Mitzlaff (U.S. Patent #: 4,636,741; hereinafter "Mitzlaff").

Regarding claims 8 and 17, Werling teaches all subject matter as claimed above. Werlington further teaches location sensing subsystem determining said location by employing a sensor selected from the group consisting of:

a designated sensor (column 3, lines 1-14),

a contact sensor (i.e. heat/humidity sensor is used to detect a contact with human skin, column 3, lines 1-14)

It should be noticed that Werlington fails to clearly teach a belt clip sensor. However, Merriam teaches such limitations in column 3, lines 36-49 for the purpose of indicating whether the device within relatively close proximity to a user.

Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to incorporate the use of a belt clip sensor, as taught by Merriam, in view of Werlington, in order to determine the behavior of the mobile unit.

It should be further noticed that Werlington and Merriam, in combination, fails to clearly teach a cradle sensor. However, Mitzlaff teaches such limitations in the abstract for the purpose of detecting the presence of the Mobile unit.

Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to incorporate the use of a cradle sensor, as taught by Mitzlaff, into view of Werlington and Merriam, in order to adjust the transmission power accordingly.

Claim 19-21, 24-25 and 27 are rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Werling (U.S. Patent #: 6,456,856) in view of Vogel et al. (U.S. Patent #: 6,498,924, hereinafter "Vogel").

Regarding claim 19, Werling teaches a portable cell phone (FIG.2), comprising:

a power circuit (FIG. 1 block 16 column 2 lines 54-66)

a proximity regulation system, including:

a location sensing subsystem that determines a location of said portable cell phone proximate a user (FIG. 1, block 18; column 3, lines 1-14); and

a power governing subsystem, coupled to said location sensing subsystem, that determines a proximity transmit power level of said portable cell phone based on said location (FIG. 1, block 17; column 3, lines 15-18).

It should be noticed that Werling fails to clearly teach the feature of providing a network adjusted transmit power level as a function of a position to a communications tower. However, Vogel teaches such limitations in column 1, lines 26-37 for the purpose of reducing the overall interference level.

Page 7

Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to incorporate the use of providing a network adjusted transmit power level as a function of a position to a communications tower, as taught by Vogel, in view of Werling, in order to prevent the cell phone from unnecessarily transmitting at highest level at all times.

Regarding claim 20, Werling teaches limitations of the claim in column 3, lines 1-14 (i.e. power is reduced when phones used close to human body including head).

Regarding claim 21, Werling teaches limitations of the claim in column 4, lines 36-60 (i.e. P_{MAX}).

Regarding claim 24, Werling further teaches limitations of the claim in FIG.1, block 17 and column 2, lines 54-66 (i.e. Micro controllers which are widely available as integrated circuits).

Regarding claim 25, Werling further teaches limitations of the claim in FIG. 4 and column 4, lines 40-60.

Regarding claim 27, Werling further teaches limitations of the claim in column 3, lines 1-14.

8. Claim 22 is rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Werling (U.S. Patent #: 6,456,856) in view of Vogel (U.S. Patent #:6,498,924) as applied to claim 19 above, and in further view of Pirhonen et al. (US Patent #: 6,195,562).

Regarding claim 22, Werlington and Vogel, in combination, teaches all subject matter as claimed above except for proximity transmit power level being maximum when said portable cell phone is operating in a headset operation mode or data transfer operation mode. However, Pirhonen teaches such limitations in column 2, lines 29-37 for the purpose of achieving high speed data transmission.

Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to incorporate the use of proximity transmit power level being maximum when said portable cell phone is operating in a data transfer operation mode, as taught by Pirhonen, into view of Werling and Vogel, in order to achieve high speed data transmission.

9. Claim 23 is rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over Werling (U.S. Patent #: 6,456,856) in view of Vogel (U.S. Patent #:6,498,924) as applied to claim 19 above, and in further view of Merriam (U.S. Patent #: 6,408,187).

Regarding claim 23, Werling and Vogel, in combination, teaches all subject matter as claimed above except for portable cell phone being located on a belt-clip of the user. However, Merriam teaches such limitations in column 3, lines 36-49 for the purpose of indicating whether the device within relatively close proximity to a user.

Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the inventions was made to incorporate the use of portable cell phone

Page 9

being located on a belt-clip of the user, as taught by Merriam, into view of Werling and Vogel, in order to determine the behavior of the communications device.

10. Claim 26 is rejected under 35 U.S.C. 103(a) as being unpatentable over
Werling et al. (U.S. Patent #: 6,456,856) in view of Vogel (U.S. Patent
#:6,498,924) as applied to claim 19 above, and in further view of Merriam (U.S.
Patent #: 6,408,187) and Mitzlaff (U.S. Patent #: 4,636,741).

Regarding claim 26, Werlington and Vogel, in combination, teaches all subject matter as claimed above. Werlington further teaches location sensing subsystem determining said location by employing a sensor selected from the group consisting of:

a designated sensor (column 3, lines 1-14),

a contact sensor (i.e. heat/humidity sensor is used to detect a contact with human skin, column 3, lines 1-14)

It should be noticed that Werlington and Vogel, in combination, fails to clearly teach a belt clip sensor. However, Merriam teaches such limitations in column 3, lines 36-49 for the purpose of indicating whether the device within relatively close proximity to a user.

Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to incorporate the use of a belt clip sensor, as taught by Merriam, in view of Werlington and Vogel, in order to determine the behavior of the mobile unit.

It should be further noticed that Werlington, Vogel and Merriam, in combination, fails to clearly teach a cradle sensor. However, Mitzlaff teaches such limitations in the abstract for the purpose of detecting the presence of the Mobile unit.

Therefore, it would have been obvious to one of ordinary skill in the art at the time the invention was made to incorporate the use of a cradle sensor, as taught by Mitzlaff, into view of Werlington, Vogel and Merriam, in order to adjust the transmission power accordingly.

11. Any inquiry concerning this communication or earlier communications from the examiner should be directed to Thai Vu whose telephone number is 703-305-3417. The examiner can normally be reached on 9:00AM-6:00PM, M-F.

If attempts to reach the examiner by telephone are unsuccessful, the examiner's supervisor, Curtis Kuntz can be reached on 703-305-3900. The fax phone number for the organization where this application or proceeding is assigned is 703-872-9306.

Page 11

Information regarding the status of an application may be obtained from the Patent Application Information Retrieval (PAIR) system. Status information for published applications may be obtained from either Private PAIR or Public. PAIR. Status information for unpublished applications is available through Private PAIR only. For more information about the PAIR system, see http://pairdirect.uspto.gov. Should you have questions on access to the Private PAIR system, contact the Electronic Business Center (EBC) at 866-217-9197 (tollfree).

Thai Vu Examiner Art Unit 2643

p. jile -

BINH TIEU PRIMARY EXAMINER

				Ŋ)			-
					Application/0 09/967,140	Control No.	Applicant(s)/P Reexamination	atent Under n ET AL.
	Notice of References Cited				Examiner		Art Unit	Page 1 of 1
					Thai Vu		2643	Page For T
				U.S. PA	ATENT DOCUM	ENTS		
*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY			Name		Classification
	А	US-6,498,924 B2	12-2002	Vogel e	et al.			455/67.11
	В	US-6,456,856 B1	09-2002	Werling) et al.			455/575.5
	С	US-6,195,562 B1	02-2001	Pirhone	en et al.			455/553.1
	D	US-6,408,187 B1	06-2002	Merrian	n, Charles			455/458
	Е	US-4,636,741	01-1987	Mitzlaff	, James E.			330/127
	F	US-						
	G	US-						
	н	US-						
	I	US-						
	J	US-						
	к	US-						
	L	US-						
	м	US-						
		1		FOREIGN	PATENT DOC	JMENTS		
*		Document Number Country Code-Number-Kind Code	Date MM-YYYY	0	Country	Name		Classification
	N							
	0							
	Р							
	Q							
	R							
	s					4 %2 P		24 - Vie -
	т							
				NON-P	ATENT DOCUM	ENTS		
*		Inclu	de as applicable	e: Author,	Title Date, Publis	sher, Edition or Volume, I	Pertinent Pages)	
	υ							
	v							
	v w							

Dates in MM-YYYY format are publication dates. Classifications may be US or foreign.

U.S. Patent and Trademark Office PTO-892 (Rev. 01-2001)

Notice of References Cited

Part of Paper No. 5

IFE			
OCT 0 7 2002			
Under the Paperwork Reduction Act of 1995, no persons are req	Approved f U.S. Patent and Trademark (juired to respond to a collection	PTO/SB/0 or use through 10/31/2002. OMB Office: U.S. DEPARTMENT OF C of information unless it contains a	8A (10-01) 0651-0031 COMMERCE a valid OMB
Substitute for form 1449A/PTO	Co	omplete if Known	
Substitute for form 1449A/PTO	Co Application Number	09/967,140	
Substitute for form 1449A/PTO INFORMATION DISCLOSURE	Co Application Number Filing Date	09/967,140 09/28/2001	
Substitute for form 1449A/PTO INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT	Co Application Number Filing Date First Named Inventor	09/967,140 09/28/2001 Richard L. McDowell	RECEIVED
Substitute for form 1449A/PTO INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT	Co Application Number Filing Date First Named Inventor Art Unit	09/967,140 09/967,140 09/28/2001 Richard L. McDowell 2681	
Substitute for form 1449A/PTO INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (use as many sheets as necessary)	Co Application Number Filing Date First Named Inventor Art Unit Examiner Name	Demplete if Known 09/967,140 09/28/2001 Richard L. McDowell 2681 N/A	RECEIVED
Substitute for form 1449A/PTO INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT BY APPLICANT (use as many sheets as necessary) Sheet 1 of 1	Cc Application Number Filing Date First Named Inventor Art Unit Examiner Name Attorney Docket Number	Display Section Display Section 09/967,140 09/28/2001 09/28/2001 Richard L. McDowell 2681 N/A N/A R.L. MCDOWELL 20-76	RECEIVED

	U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS						
Examiner Initials	Cite No. ¹	Document Number Number - Kind Code ² (if known	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear		
		US-					
		US-					
		US-					
		US-					
		US-					
		US-					
		US-					
		US-					
		US-					
		US-					
		US-					
		US-					
		US-					
		US-					
		US-					
		US-					
		US-					
		U\$-					
		US-					
		US-					

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS							
ite Io. ¹	Foreign Patent Document	Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY	Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document	Pages, Columns, Lines, Where Relevant Passages or Relevant Figures Appear	Те		
	EP 0 977 304 A1	02/02/2000	Werling, et al.				
	EP 0 843 421 A2	05/20/1998	Pirhonen, Riku				
	WO 98/29968	07/09/1998	Bradley, James F., et al.				
				anan	<u> </u>		
	ite o. 1	FOR: Foreign Patent Document Country, Code3 - Number ⁴ - Kind Code ³ (if known) EP 0 977 304 A1 EP 0 843 421 A2 WO 98/29968	FOREIGN PATENT D Ite Foreign Patent Document. Publication Date 0.1 Country, Code 3 -Number ⁴ - Kind Code ³ (if known) MM-DD-YYYY EP 0 977 304 A1 02/02/2000 05/20/1998 WO 98/29968 07/09/1998	FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS Ite Foreign Patent Document Publication Date Name of Patentee or Applicant of Cited Document Country,Code3 -Number4 - Kind Code* (if known) Publication Date MM-DD-YYYY Applicant of Cited Document EP 0 977 304 A 1 02/02/2000 Werling, et al. • WO 98/29968 07/09/1998 Bradley, James F., et al.	FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS Pages, Columns, Lines, Lines		

Examiner Signature	Unthan	Date Considere	d 08/05/04

*EXAMINER: Initial if reference considered, whether or not citation is in conformance with MPEP 609. Draw line through citation if not in conformance and not considered. Include copy of this form with next communication to applicant.
¹ Applicant's unique citation designation number (optional). ² See Kinds Codes of USPTO Patent Documents at <u>www.uspto.gov</u> or MPEP 901.04. ³ Enter Office that issued the document, by the two-letter code (WIPO Standard ST.3). ⁴ For Japanese patent documents, the indication of the year of the reign of the Emperor must precede the serial number of the patent document. Is find of document by the appropriate symbols as indicated on the document under WIPO Standard ST. 16 if possible. ⁶ Applicant is to place a check mark here if English language Translation is attached.

Burden Houry Statement: This form is estimated to take 2.0 hours to complete. Time will vary depending upon the needs of the individual case. Any comments on the amount of time you are required to complete this form should be sent to the Chief Information Officer, U.S. Patent and Trademark Office, Washington, DC 20231. DO NOT SEND FEES OR COMPLETED FORMS TO THIS ADDRESS. SEND TO: Assistant Commissioner for Patents, Washington, DC 20231.

N



US006195562B1

(10) Patent No.:

(45) Date of Patent:

(12) United States Patent Pirhonen et al.

. .

(54) SYSTEM FOR LIMITING THE TRANSMITTED POWER OF A MOBILE COMMUNICATION MEANS

- (75) Inventors: Riku Pirhonen; Tero Ojanperä, both of Helsinki (FI)
- (73) Assignee: Nokia Mobile Phones Ltd., Espoo (Fi)
- (*) Notice: This patent issued on a continued prosecution application filed under 37 CFR 1.53(d), and is subject to the twenty year patent term provisions of 35 U.S.C. 154(a)(2).

Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.

(21) Appl. No.: 08/968,645

(56)

- (22) Filed: Nov. 12, 1997
- (30) Foreign Application Priority Data

Nov.	13, 1996	(FI)		••••••	964548
(51)	Int. Cl. ⁷		H04B	1/38; H0	4M 1/00
1000					

(52) U.S. Cl. 455/553; 455/522; 455/557 (58) Field of Search 455/522, 550,

455/552, 553, 557, 575, 90, 559, 127, 125,

574

References Cited

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

D. 353,809	12/1994	Nuovo et al D14/138
5,091,919	2/1992	Kuisma 375/60
5,101,175	3/1992	Vaisanen
5,109,538	4/1992	Ikonen et al 455/89
5,118,965	6/1992	Vaisanen et al 307/251
5,123,031	6/1992	Kuisma 375/60
5,152,004	9/1992	Vaisanen et al 45/68
5,199,110 *	3/1993	Adachi 455/126
5,204,643	4/1993	Varronen
5,214,372	5/1993	Vaisanen et al 324/95
5 230 091	7/1993	Vaisanen 455/88

5,241,694	8/1993	Vaisanen et al 455/126
5,276,917	1/1994	Vanhagen et al 455/89
5,291,147	3/1994	Muurinen
5,291,150	3/1994	Saarnimo et al
5,301,360 +	4,1994	Goldberg 455/575
5,392,454	2/1995	Pakonen 455/115
5,404,585	4/1995	Vimpari et al 455/115
5,423.078 *	6/1995	Epperson et al 455/553
5,432,473	7/1995	Mattila et al
5,434,537	7/1995	Kukkonen
5,450,620	9/1995	Vaisanen 455/127
5,493,255	2/1996	Murtojarvi
5,524,044	6/1996	Takeda

US 6,195,562 B1

*Feb. 27, 2001

(List continued on next page.)

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

0661824	7/1995	(EP) .
07283758	10/1995	(JP).
WO 93/01659	1/1993	(wo).
WO 96/34461	10/1996	(WO).
	OTHER	PUBLICATIONS

Mobile Communications International, Issue 31, 1996, pp. 57-58.

Primary Examiner-Nguyen Vo

(74) Attorney, Agent, or Firm-Perman & Green, LLP

(57) ABSTRACT

The aim of the invention is to restrict the maximum transmitted power used by a mobile communication device. In most countries there are regulations in force which impose certain maximum limits on the power of electromagnetic radiation directed towards humans. These limits vary from country to country and will most probably be tightened in the future. In the system according to the invention, the upper limit of transmitted power is varied according to the mode of usage of the mobile communication device. A mobile communication device according to such a system meets the requirements made on a device operating close to the user's head, but the same mobile communication means may still be used in applications demanding greater transmitted power in a situation where the power limits placed on the radio set are less strict.

5 Claims, 3 Drawing Sheets



 $\sigma_{\rm eff} = 0$

· · · ·

US 6,195,562 B1 Page 2

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,564,074	10/1996	Juntti	455/67.1
5,675,611	10/1997	Lehtinen et al	375/297
5,797,089	* 8/1998	Nguyen	455/557

 5,524,275
 6/1996
 Lindell
 455/117

 5,530,923
 6/1996
 Heinonen et al.
 455/126

 5,541,609
 7/1996
 Stutzman et al.
 343/702

 5,548,616
 8/1996
 Mucke et al.
 375/295

* cited by examiner

U.S. Patent



Fig. 1

08/05/2004, EAST Version: 1.4.1





08/05/2004, EAST Version: 1.4.1

.

.



Fig. 3

08/05/2004, EAST Version: 1.4.1

SYSTEM FOR LIMITING THE TRANSMITTED POWER OF A MOBILE COMMUNICATION MEANS

. .

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

This invention is aimed at limiting the maximum transmitted power used by a mobile communication means.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

In most countries there are regulations in force which place certain maximum limits on the power of electromagnetic radiation directed towards humans. These limits vary from country to country and will most probably be tightened in the future.

On the other hand, as the transmission speed in mobile communication means systems increases, the amount of energy radiated by mobile communication means also increases. For example, in networks based upon TDMA technology, data transmission speeds may in principle be 20 increased by using several successive time slots in the same TDMA frame, in which case the mean transmitted power increases. The use of several successive time slots in the same frame is possible in the Universal Mobile Telecommunication System (UMTS) under development and in new Global System for Mobile communications (GSM) standards which are under development. In CMDA systems the transmitted power has to be raised in line with the data transmission speed if one wishes to keep the bit error rate constant. In both basic techniques the amount of energy radiated by the antenna increases as the data transmission speed increases, in which case the permitted limits may at some stage be exceeded.

The radiation power caused by a particular radio set and directed towards the user is typically measured on the basis of the least favourable operating situation, in the case of a cordless telephone with the antenna almost pressed against the user's head. If a radio set may be used in many ways demanding differing transmitted power, for example for voice transmission and for high-speed data transfer, all functions of the radio set have to adjust to the limits which follow from the least favourable operating situation.

For example in the current GSM system, the maximum power of a mobile communication means which is used during one time slot is 2 W, which means that the mean transmitted power is approximately 250 mW. According to new GSM standards which are being developed, a mobile communication means may use for the high-speed data transfer as many as all eight time slots in one frame, in which case the mean transmitted power is 2 W. This causes problems if the 250 mW which is satisfactory for voice calls has been set as the upper limit of radio power directed towards the user's head. In this situation the mobile communication means may not use maximum power levels, but must use instantaneous transmitted power lower than in a voice call, so that the limit of mean transmitted power is not exceeded. This again causes audibility problems, since the base stations in the mobile communication means network are designed to cope with the needs of a voice link.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The aim of this invention is to create a system which adjusts the power level used by a mobile communication means to the mode of usage of the mobile communication 65 means. A further aim of the invention is to create a system with the aid of which a mobile communication means may

utilize the maximum permitted transmitted power in any given situation. In addition, an aim of the invention is to create a system with the aid of which the user may, if he so desires, limit the maximum values of electromagnetic radiation directed towards his body.

These aims are achieved by incorporating in the mobile communication means a device for identification of the mode of usage, and by arranging for the transmitted power of the mobile communication means to be limited according

10 to the mode of usage and the type of current connection or connections.

Characteristic of the system according to the invention is what is described in the characteristic part of the independent claims. Dependent claims describe further advanta-

geous embodiments of the invention. The invention is further directed to a mobile communication means, which is characterized by that which is described in the characterizing part of the corresponding independent claim.

In the system according to the invention, the upper limit of transmitted power used by the mobile communication means is varied according to the mode of usage. A mobile communication means according to such a system meets the more stringent requirements placed upon sets which are to

be used next to the user's head, but the same mobile communication means may still be employed for applications demanding greater transmitted power in a situation where the power limits imposed on the radio set are less strict.

When a mobile communication means is used in a situation typical of a telephone, the mean power transmitted by the mobile communication means is limited to the maximum value for a telephone permitted by regulations and test procedures. When a mobile communication means is used for example as a data transfer device in conjunction with a portable computer, the maximum permissible transmitted power may be increased in accordance with the requirements of the data transfer rate employed.

SHORT DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

The invention will now be described in greater detail with reference to favourable embodiments, presented by way of example, and to the attached drawings, where

FIG. 1 represents one possible mechanism for identification of the mode of usage of a mobile communication means, as used in the system according to the invention,

FIG. 2 represents a second possible mechanism for identification of the mode of usage of a mobile communication means, as used in the system according to the invention, and FIG. 3 illustrates an advantageous embodiment of the invention.

In the drawings, the same reference numbers and symbols are used for parts which correspond to each other.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED INVENTION

In the system according to the invention, the transmitted power of a mobile communication means is limited according to its operating situation. When the mobile communication means is used as a cordless telephone next to the user's head, the system restricts the transmitted power of the mobile communication means to the limits demanded by this situation. When the user connects the mobile communication means to a portable microcomputer, for the purpose of data transfer for example, the system permits the use of transmitted power greater than in the preceding situation, in

· ..

which case the mobile communication means may use transmission speeds higher than the transmission speed required for a talking connection. Without impairment of the quality of the link. A mobile communication means equipped with such a system is capable of adhering to differing transmitted power limits according to different operating situations, with the possibility however of using the high transmitted power required by high transmission speeds when it is both necessary and possible.

3

In the system according to this invention, several different ¹⁰ methods may be employed for identification of the mode of usage of the mobile communication means, depending upon the design of the mobile communication means to which the invention is applied.

Some mobile communication means are openable, so that, ¹⁵ when the mobile communication means is closed, the communication means acts as a cordless telephone, and when it is open the communication means acts, for example, as a portable computer and multi-purpose communication means, which may be used for data transfer in many ways employing known technology. An example of this which may be mentioned is the GSM multi-purpose communication means, as presented, for example, on pages 57-58 of issue 31, 1996, of Mobile Communications International. FIG. 1 contains a particular solution according to the invention as applied to such a mobile communication means. On different sides of a hinge 4 for connection of two openable parts 2, 3 of a mobile communication means are situated a switch 12 in a recess and a pin 10. When the mobile communication means is closed for normal telephone operation, the pin 10 presses against the switch 12. When the user opens the mobile communication means, the pin 10 releases the switch 12, so that the system according to the invention receives information concerning a change of mode of usage of the mobile communication means.

The structure in FIG. 1 is merely an example of a possible solution. Monitoring of the cover position may, in the system according to the invention, be realized in many other ways familiar to men skilled in the art.

Mobile communication means are frequently used connected to a portable computer. FIG. 2 shows one particular method of detection of the mode in such a configuration. In FIG. 2, a portable computer 20 is connected by means of a connection cable 18 to a mobile communication means 1. At the interface 16 of the mobile communication means 1 there is a pin 10, which is pressed down by the plug 14 of the connection cable 18 when the user inserts the plug 14 into the mobile communication means. The pin 10 may for example press against a mechanical switch so that the system is notified of the change of mode. Connected to a portable computer, the mobile communication means is usually employed purely for data transfer, in which case the computer acts as a terminal, for example, with which the user links up to the computing system at his place of work. In such a situation high transmission speeds are also an advantage. In such an application a system according to the invention permits the use of high transmitted power necessitated by the data transfer rates when the plug 14 is inserted into the connection socket 16. When the connection cable 18 is not connected to the mobile communication means 1, the system according to the invention only permits the use of transmitted power as required for a voice call.

Identification of the mode of usage may also be based upon the use of a position switch or any other conventional 65 position sensing device, in which case the system permits the use of high transmitted power when the mobile com-

munication means is in the horizontal plane or sufficiently close to a horizontal position, for example when it is placed on a table. The position switch is to best advantage designed to recognize in particular when that side of the mobile communication means which is greatest in surface area is horizontal. With such an arrangement it is possible to avoid incorrect mode identification, for example in a situation where the user is speaking into the mobile communication means at the same time as leaning backwards in an armchair.

In the mobile communication means there may be a special pull-out alphanumeric keyboard for the entry of text. In such a mobile communication means identification of the mode may be based upon the position of the keyboard: the system interprets the set as being in telephone use when the keyboard is retracted within the set, and in data transfer use when the keyboard is pulled out.

In a system according to this invention, restriction of the mean transmitted power being used may be effected in a number of different ways. In time division mobile communication means systems, the mean transmitted power may be reduced by decreasing the number of time slots transmitted in one frame, in which case the data transmission speed drops. The mean transmitted power may also be reduced by decreasing the instantaneous power used during one time slot, in which case the number of time slots to be transmitted may be kept constant.

Limitation of the transmitted power may to best advantage be effected according to the operating situation. For example, if the mobile communication means is transmitting a file from its memory at a high data transfer rate using several time slots precisely when the user switches the telephone to a mode in which the set is used principally as a telephone, the method for limitation of transmitted power which is employed may be chosen on the basis of the type of data transmission connection. If the transmission connection used permits a change in the transmission speed, the system reduces the number of time slots used. If the transmission connection does not permit a change in the transmission speed, the number of time slots used must be kept constant, in which case the transmitted power used during one time slot must be reduced. In conditions of good audibility this is not a problem, but reduction of transmitted power at the margins of the area covered by the base station may cause an increase in bit error probability or interruption of the connection.

Power transmitted in CDMA systems may be reduced either by lowering the data transmission speed, in which case the quantity of energy transmitted by the mobile communication means falls, or by keeping the data transmission speed the same but reducing the transmitted power, for example by decreasing the transmitter's output stage amplification, in which case the bit error rate of the connection increases. The choice of the best procedure thus depends upon the quality of the connection in the CDMA system, upon the data transmission speed and upon the quality of the transmission connection.

Owing to the various effects of the different ways of limiting transmitted power as described above, the user may to his advantage determine in advance the type of power limiting method which the mobile communication means should use in the first place. The user may, for example, decide that the mobile communication means should in the first place reduce the number of time slots used, in which case the connection will be maintained more securely, and that the power used during one time slot should be reduced only when some other type of function is not possible.

- ..

In the system according to this invention, the maximum power limit observed by the system when the mobile communication means is used as a telephone may be set on manufacture of the mobile communication means on the basis of test measurements carried out on samples. Owing to changes in the limits set by the authorities and to the differing regulations in different countries, it is an advantage if the said power limit can be changed at a later stage either by the retailer or by the user of the mobile communication means.

The system according to the invention may furthermore restrict the modes of usage of the mobile communication means when the mobile communication means uses a high transmitted power. The system may, for example, totally prevent use of the mobile communication means as a ¹⁵ telephone, or permit only calls made with the aid of the hands-free function. With such an arrangement it is possible to affect the user in such a way that he does not use the mobile communication means exceeds the limits according ²⁰ to issued regulations.

The system according to the invention may thus restrict the function of the mobile communication means in addition to limiting of the transmitted power, by restricting the mode of usage. The system may then react to a change in mode when a high data transmission speed and a high transmitted power are in use, for example in the following three ways:

by reducing the number of time slots used during one frame,

- if this is not possible on account of the transmission mode used, by reducing the power used during one time slot, or
- by preventing the making of a normal call, if a decrease in the transmitted power used in data transfer threatens 35 to interrupt the transmission connection.

FIG. 3 shows a block diagram of a digital mobile communication means according to an advantageous embodiment of the invention. The mobile communication means comprises a microphone 301, keyboard 307, display 306, earpiece 314, antenna duplexer or switch 308, antenna 309 and a control unit 305, which all are typical components of conventional mobile communication means. Further, the mobile communication means contains typical transmission and receiver blocks 311, 304. Transmission block 311 com- 45 prises functionality necessary for speech and channel coding, encryption, and modulation, and the necessary RF circuitry for amplification of the signal for transmission. Receiver block 304 comprises the necessary amplifier circuits and functionality necessary for demodulating and 50 decryption of the signal, and removing channel and speech coding. The signal produced by the microphone 301 is amplified in the amplifier stage 302 and converted to digital form in the A/D converter 303, whereafter the the signal is taken to the transmitter block 304. The transmitter block 55 encodes the digital signal and produces the modulated and amplified RF-signal, whereafter the RF signal is taken to the antenna 309 via the duplexer or switch 308. The receiver block 311 demodulates the received signal and removes the encryption and channel coding. The resulting speech signal 60 is converted to analog form in the D/A converter 312, the output signal of which is amplified in the amplifier stage 313, whereafter the amplified signal is taken to the earpiece 314. The control unit 305 controls the functions of the mobile communication means, reads the commands given 65 by the user via the keypad 306 and displays messages to the user via the display 307. Further, the control unit commu6

nicates with external devices via the connection socket 16 and monitors the state of the switch inside the communication socket 16 as well as other switches 12 indicating the mode of usage of the communication means. The control unit may also monitor the output signal of a position sensing device 11. The control unit then controls the transmitting power of the communication means and/or allows and/or restricts the mode of usage of the communication means in the ways described previously. When performing such

o control, the control unit may take also into account the types of the connections active at that time. For example, if one of the connections is for communication of speech and the mobile communication means is not in a hands-free mode, the control unit may limit the transmitting power. As a

further example, if the mobile communication means is in a hands-free mode, the control unit may allow any necessary transmission mode and power to be used, since the user will most likely not have the mobile communication means close to his/her body in such a situation.

The present invention is not limited to the embodiment of FIG. 3, which is presented as an example only. For example, the invention can as well be applied to an analog communication means.

With the aid of the system according to the invention the mobile communication means user may limit the amount of radiation directed towards his body.

A mobile communication means utilizing the system according to the invention may be employed both as a cordless telephone and as a high-speed data transfer device 30 and in both operating situations it may use the maximum mean transmitted power permitted in the operating situation in question.

The invention has been explained above with reference to certain favourable applications thereof, but it is clear that the invention may be varied in many different ways within the framework of the innovative concept defined in the attached Patent Claims.

What is claimed is:

1. A system for limiting the transmitted power of a mobile communication means having at least one connection having a connection type comprising

- at least one means for producing an indication of the mode of usage of the mobile communication means, one mode of usage being for voice transmission and another mode of usage being for data transmission; and
- a control unit for controlling the functions of the mobile communication means and for controlling the magnitude of the transmitting power of the mobile communication means as a response to said means for producing an indication of the mode of usage thereof and the connection type of the at least one connection;
- wherein the control unit is operable for limiting the number of time slots used for transmission in one frame of a time division mobile communication means system as a response to an indication produced by said means for identification and the connection type of the at least one connection, transmitted power being a function of the number of time slots transmitted in one frame of the time division mobile communication means system.
- 2. A system according to claim 1 comprising
- a connector for connecting an external cable,
- and in which system at least one of said at least one means for producing an indication is a switch indicating whether or not there is a cable connected to said connector.

- - •

US 6,195,562 B1

- 3. A system in according to claim 1 comprising
- a first part, a second part, and at least one hinge for rotatably attaching said first part to said second part, and in which system at least one of said at least one means

7

- and in which system at least one of said at least one means for producing an indication is a means for producing an indication of the relative position of said first and second parts of the mobile communication means.
- 4. A system in according to claim 1 wherein

. .

- at least one of said at least one means for producing an $_{10}$ indication is a position sensing device.
- 5. A mobile communication means having at least one connection having a connection type comprising
 - at least one means for producing an indication of the mode of usage of the mobile communication means, one 15 mode of usage being for voice transmission and another mode of usage being for data transmission,

- 8
- a control unit for controlling the functions of the mobile ...communication means and for controlling the transmitting power of the mobile communication means as a response to an indication produced by said means for identification and the connection type of the at least one connection;
- wherein the control unit is operable for limiting the number of time slots used for transmission in one frame of a time division mobile communication means system as a response to an indication produced by said means for identification and the connection type of the at least one connection, transmitted power being a function of the number of time slots transmitted in one frame of the time division mobile communication means system.

* * * * *





(12) United States Patent

Werling et al.

(54) MOBILE RADIO EQUIPMENT FORMING ANTENNA PATTERN TO PROJECT USER FROM RADIATION

- (75) Inventors: Thierry B. F. Werling; Raul A. Bruzzone, both of Le Mans (FR)
- (73) Assignee: Koninklijke Philips Electronics N.V. (NL)
- (*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.
- (21) Appl. No.: 09/361,074
- (22) Filed: Jul. 26, 1999

(30) Foreign Application Priority Data

- Jul. 28, 1998 (FR) 98 09651
- (51) Int. Cl.⁷ H04B 1/38
- (52)
 U.S. Cl.
 455/550; 455/129

 (58)
 Field of Search
 455/129, 121,
- 455/125, 550, 90

(56) References Cited

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

5,229,975	А		7/1993	Truesdell et al	367/107
5.274,844	А	٠	12/1993	Harrison et al	342/368
5 541 609	Α	٠	7/1996	Stutzman et al.	343/702

(10) Patent No.:	US	6,456,856	B1
(45) Date of Patent:		Sep. 24, 20)02

5,729,238 A		3/1998	Walton et al	343/704
5,805,067 A	٠	9/1998	Bradley et al	340/552
5,924,020 A	٠	7/1999	Forssen et al	342/373
5,956,626 A	٠	9/1999	Kaschke et al	340/552
5,995,862 A	٠	11/1999	Gallorini	250/372

FOREIGN PATENT DOCUMENTS

0752735 A1 1/1997 H01Q/1/24

* cited by examiner

EP

Primary Examiner-Daniel Hunter Assistant Examiner-Nick Corsaro

(74) Attorney, Agent, or Firm-Dicran Halajian

(57) ABSTRACT

A radio communication apparatus includes a transceiver coupled to an antenna structure with many directional antennas that form a radiation pattern. The antenna structure gives greater importance to certain directions of transmission. A power regulation device is controlled by a control element for modifying the radiation pattern. The control element includes switches for selectively activating/deactivating the directional antennas to modify the radiation pattern. A proximity detection device measures at least one proximity parameter and feeds the control element with a proximity indication for controlling the power regulation_device_ to reduce the radiation pattern in the direction of the radio communication apparatus user. The proximity detection device includes a humidity and/or a temperature detector.

12 Claims, 3 Drawing Sheets





,

Sep. 24, 2002

Sheet 1 of 3



, . **.**



Sheet 2 of 3

FIG. 3

08/04/2004, EAST Version: 1.4.1



Sep. 24, 2002

• • •

-K0

Sheet 3 of 3

US 6,456,856 B1



FIG.4

08/04/2004, EAST Version: 1.4.1

MOBILE RADIO EQUIPMENT FORMING ANTENNA PATTERN TO PROJECT USER FROM RADIATION

FIELD OF THE INVENTION

The invention relates to a radio communication apparatus comprising:

- transceiver means coupled to an antenna structure featuring a radiation diagram which antenna structure gives 10 greater importance to certain directions of transmission and
- a power regulation device controlled by a control element for modifying said radiation diagram.

The invention also relates to mobile radio equipment 15 suitable for communicating with at least one radio base station of a radio telecommunication system, said equipment comprising:

- radio transceiver means coupled to an antenna structure featuring a radiation diagram which antenna structure 20 gives greater importance to certain directions of transmission and
- a power regulation device controlled by a control element for modifying said radiation diagram.

The invention further relates to a radio base station of a 25 radio telecommunication system suitable for communicating with at least one mobile radio terminal, said station comprising:

- radio transceiver means coupled to an antenna structure featuring a radiation diagram which antenna structure gives greater importance to certain directions of transmission and
- a power regulation device controlled by a control element for modifying said radiation diagram.

35 The invention finally relates to a power control method for controlling the power radiated in a given direction by a plurality of directional antennas which have respective transmit powers.

The invention finds many applications in the field of 40 telecommunication by radio channel, notably radiotelephony. The invention particularly applies to systems called third generation systems, operating according to a Universal Mobile Telecommunications System (UMTS) standard using the technique of Code-Division Multiple Access (CDMA). Equipment provided for such systems comprises a plurality of directional antennas suitable for emitting noxious radiation absorbed by human tissue situated in the proximity of these apparatus.

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

European patent application no. EP 752 735, published in the German language, describes an apparatus of the type defined in the opening paragraph, comprising means for The apparatus comprises an antenna array electrically connected to a control unit for individually regulating the transmit power of each antenna as a function of the calculated variation between the impedance measured at the level of the antenna and a reference value corresponding to its 60 impedance in the clear field. This difference represents a measure of the radiation power absorbed by human tissue.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention proposes means for avoiding the 65 emission of radio waves in the direction of human tissue, which means are easier to implement and more effective

than those described in cited document. Therefore, an apparatus as mentioned in the opening paragraph is provided, characterized in that it comprises a proximity detection device for measuring at least one proximity parameter and feeding the control element with a proximity indication for controlling the power regulation device.

According to an important characteristic feature of the invention, the antenna structure comprises a plurality of directional antennas which have each a transmit power in a given direction and the power regulation device comprises power control means for regulating the transmit power of the directional antennas.

According to another characteristic feature of the invention, the power control means comprise a switch for selectively activating/deactivating one or various directional antennas

According to two particular embodiments of the invention, the proximity detection device comprises a temperature detector and/or a humidity detector enabling to distinguish, among the various obstacles to the radio propagation, the presence of a human being in any obstacle. As it is an object of the invention to limit the emission of noxious radiation for the benefit of the user's health, it is very advantageous to use such proximity detectors.

These detectors further feature two additional advantages As they are passive, they are harmless to the user, because they emit no radio wave at all. Moreover, they make both the transmit power measurements and the calculations of the power differences recommended by the method cited previously redundant. These detectors are not only energy consumers but are also noxious, since they imply to transmit at a certain power level for making the measurements before possibly effecting a power level control intended to limit the user's absorption of radiation.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

These and other aspects of the invention will be apparent from and elucidated with reference to the embodiments described hereinafter.

In the drawings:

FIG. 1 is a block diagram of a communication apparatus according to the invention,

FIG. 2 represents an example of the mobile radio equipment according to the invention,

FIG. 3 is a block diagram of a particular embodiment of the equipment represented in FIG. 2, and

FIG. 4 is a flow chart for illustrating an example of a method of controlling transmit power according to the 50 invention.

DESCRIPTION OF PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS

The example represented in FIG. 1 may be integrated with limiting the power of radiation absorbed by human tissue. 55 a radiotelephone using various directional transmitting antennas. The communication apparatus comprises a transceiver device 11 coupled to a plurality of directional antennas 12 to 15 (having a radiation diagram giving greater importance to certain directions of transmission). Each antenna is electrically connected to a power regulation device 16 controlled by a control element 17. Such an element may be formed by a suitably programmed microcontroller µC which includes a programmable read-only memory, a random-access memory, an input/output interface having an analog/digital converter and a digital/analog converter and all the devices necessary for the interface with the various peripherals.

A proximity detector 18 connected to the control element 17 detects the presence of human tissue in the proximity of the apparatus by measuring a proximity parameter, such as temperature or degree of humidity, and transmits a proximity coefficient characteristic of the detected object to the control s element 17. Such a detector is thus capable of differentiating between a human body leaturing a certain coefficient and another body having a different coefficient. The value of this coefficient is analyzed by the control centrol to read only pared to set values stored in, for example, the read-only 10 memory to determine, in dependence on their preterred directions of transmission, which are the directional antennas whose transmit power is to be reduced and to trigger an appropriate control of the power regulation device 16.

pow control

Jensor

regulation device 16 selects one or various antennas and adjusts their transmit power as a function of the data produced by the detector 18. On reception, when the generated powers are consider-

Under the control of the control element 17, the power 15

ably smaller than on transmission, all the directions of ²⁰ radiation may be used without a danger to the user.

According to a preferred embodiment of the invention, the proximity detector 18 is a passive type of infrared thermometer, capable of measuring the temperature of a body at a distance of about 20 cm from the detector. A variant consists of the use of a humidity detector.

Preferably, the power regulation device 16 comprises a switch (not shown) controlled by the control element 17 for individually activating or deactivating the selected antennas and radically suppressing the contribution of the deactivated antennas whose radiation diagram features a lobe in the direction of transmission to be avoided.

FIG. 2 is a perspective view of a radiotelephone comprising a structure of an antenna operating in the transceiving mode whose radiation diagram, simplified by main lobes, is represented by dotted lines. The use of separate antennas for transmission and reception is advocated when the frequency bands used for transmission and reception respectively, are too far away for them to be compatible with the passband of the antennas. On the other hand, the size of the apparatus is to be adapted to accommodate a large number of antennas, which is actually the case with equipment operating with frequencies in the gigahertz domain.

The example illustrated by FIG. 2 comprises a housing 45 20, a keyboard 21, a control display 22, an earphone 23, a microphone 24 and an antenna structure comprising four independent directional transmitting antennas situated inside the housing 20. These antennas are formed by, for example, ceramic discs which form a radiation diagram whose main 50 lobes 25, 26, 27, 28 point in four orthogonal directions. In lieu of a system with various independently controllable antennas, one may use an adjustable miniaturized network antenna of the "phased-array type" like the one described in detail in the manual "Mobile Antenna Systems Handbook", 59 K. Fujimoto et al., Artech House Inc., 1994, pp. 436-451.

FIG. 3 is a block diagram illustrating the operation of the radiotelephone represented in FIG. 2. The antennas 30 to 33 are coupled, on the one hand, to transceiver circuits Tx/Rx by means of a duplexer, and on the other hand to switches 34 to 37 controlled by a control element μ C as a function of data it receives from a proximity detector. The transceiver circuits hown to a person of ordinary skill in the art will not be described here. It will be simply recollected that a transmitting circuit coupled to an antenna structure includes at least a power amplifier. In the case of a plurality of transmitting antennas, the radiotelephone is to comprise as

- 4

many power amplifiers and transmitting circuits as there are antennas whose transmit power is to be controlled independently of the transmit power of the other antennas.

According to a preferred embodiment of the invention, the detection of human tissue by the proximity detector 39 triggers the control by the control element μ C of the appropriate switches for deactivating the antennas whose radiation diagram points to the user's head. In the example with four antennas represented in FIG. 2, the antenna producing the lobe 27 will generally have to be deactivated.

For a use in a propagation medium that gives greater importance to multiple paths and/or in a region where the density of the network of base stations is high, the suppression of the transmitting antennas featuring their main lobe in a given hemisphere does not considerably reduce the visibility of the base stations located in this hemisphere. In fact, in the first case the multiple reflections of the waves increase their probability to reach their target and in the second case the communication may be established with another available base station. Therefore, this embodiment is particularly suitable for a current use in an urban environment. On the other hand, for any other use, the addition of an omnidirectional antenna may turn out to be useful to avoid in this case losing contact with the only available base station.

According to another embodiment, each antenna is connected to its own transmitting circuit and the switches are replaced by attenuators controlled by the control element to adjust the transmit power of each antenna as a function of the result of the proximity detection.⁴ This embodiment requires that each antenna be connected to an adjustable power amplifier. As the amplifiers have a high energy consumption, this embodiment is reserved to equipment whose power consumption is not critical such as, for example, base stations of a mobile telecommunication system.

FIG. 4 illustrates a transmit power control method which can be realized by the control element 17 represented in FIG. 1 and integrated with the radiotelephone of FIG. 2 to control the power transmitted by a directional antenna structure.

The method starts at box K0. In box K1, the power PEM transmitted by the radiotelephone is read. This power may be read, for example, on the output of the power amplifier of the transmitting circuit. In box K2, the value read P_{EM} is tested and compared to a set value P_{MAX} representing the maximum radiation power considered unharmful to the user. If the result of this test PEM>PMAX is negative, the method proceeds with box K3 where all the antennas are selected without a power regulation. If the result of the test is positive, the method proceeds with box K4, with a measuring step for measuring a proximity parameter for detecting the presence of a human being in the proximity of the apparatus. Depending on the preferred embodiment, this step consists of measuring the ambient temperature T_B with the aid of an infrared sensor sensitive to a distance of about 20 cm. The test carried out in box K5 constitutes a comparison step between the measurement TB carried out in the preceding step and set values TMIN and TMAX. If the equation T_{MIN} < T_B < T_{MAX} is verified, step K6 is proceeded to for selecting suitable antennas and regulating their transmit power. If not, box K3 is returned to.

With the aid of examples a communication apparatus, telephony equipment, a base station and a power control method for modifying the radiation diagram of an antenna structure as a function of a proximity parameter have been described and illustrated. Of course it will be possible to provide variants of embodiment without leaving the scope of

the invention, notably as regards the choice of the proximity parameter to be detected and the choice of the antenna structure used.

What is claimed is:

ta, aja

- 1. A radio communication apparatus comprising:
- a transceiver coupled to an antenna structure featuring a radiation diagram, said antenna structure giving greater importance to certain directions of transmission;
- a power regulation device controlled by a control element for modifying said radiation diagram; and ¹⁰
- a proximity detection device for measuring at least one proximity parameter and feeding the control element with a proximity indication for controlling the power regulation device, wherein the proximity detection 15 device comprises a humidity detector.

2. An apparatus as claimed in claim 1, wherein the antenna structure comprises a plurality of directional antennas which have each a transmit power in a given direction and the power regulation device comprises power control means for regulating the transmit power of the directional antennas.

3. An apparatus as claimed in claim 2, wherein the power control means comprise a switch for selectively activating/ deactivating one or various directional antennas.

4. An apparatus as claimed in claim 1, wherein the proximity detection device comprises a temperature detector.

5. Mobile radio equipment suitable for communicating with at least one radio base station of a radio telecommunication system, said equipment comprising:

- a radio transceiver coupled to an antenna structure featuring a radiation diagram which antenna structure gives greater importance to certain directions of transmission; 35
- a power regulation device controlled by a control element for modifying said radiation diagram; and
- a proximity detection device for measuring at least one proximity parameter and applying to the control element an indication of proximity for controlling the ⁴⁰ power regulation device, wherein the proximity detection device comprises a humidity detector.

6. A radio base station of a radio telecommunication system suitable for communicating with at least one mobile radio terminal, said radio base station comprising:

- a radio transceiver coupled to an antenna structure featuring a radiation diagram which antenna structure gives greater importance to certain directions of transmission;
- a power regulation device controlled by a control element for modifying said radiation diagram; and
- a proximity detection device for measuring at least one proximity parameter and applying to the control ele-

6

ment a proximity indication for controlling the power regulation device, wherein the proximity detection device comprises a humidity detector.

7. A power control method for controlling the power radiated in a given direction by a plurality of directional antennas which have respective transmit powers comprising:

- measuring of at least one proximity parameter including a humidity detector for forming a measured result to detect a presence of a human being in the proximity of the apparatus,
- comparing said measured result to set values to form a comparison result, and
- selecting at least one directional antenna for regulation of its transmit power as a function of the comparison result

8. A radio communication apparatus comprising:

- a transceiver coupled to a plurality of antennas having a radiation pattern;
- a control element;
- a power regulation device controlled by said control element for modifying said radiation pattern; and
- a proximity detector which measures at least one proximity parameter, said proximity detector including a humidity detector and said at least one proximity parameter including a humidity parameter which indicates proximity of a user of said radio communication apparatus in a direction;
- wherein said control element controls said power regulation device in response to said humidity parameter so that said radiation pattern is reduced in said direction.

9. The radio communication apparatus of claim 8, wherein said control element includes at least one switch for each one of said plurality of antennas for selectively deactivating at least one of said plurality of antennas that forms said radiation pattern in said direction.

10. The radio communication apparatus of claim 8, wherein said control element includes switches for selectively deactivating at least one of said plurality of antennas that forms said radiation pattern in said direction.

11. The radio communication apparatus of claim 8, wherein said control element includes attenuators for selectively attenuating at least one of said plurality of antennas that forms said radiation pattern in said direction.

12. The radio communication apparatus of claim 8, further comprising a plurality of adjustable gain amplifiers coupled to said plurality of antennas; said control element controlling at least one of said plurality of adjustable gain amplifiers to reduce said radiation pattern in said direction.

* * * * *

08/04/2004, EAST Version: 1.4.1

45

50



(12) United States Patent Merriam

(54) METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR DETERMINING THE BEHAVIOR OF A COMMUNICATIONS DEVICE BASED UPON ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

- (75) Inventor: Charles Merriam, Sunnyvale, CA (US)
- (73) Assignee: Sun Microsystems, Inc., Palo Alto, CA (US)
- (*) Notice: Subject to any disclaimer, the term of this patent is extended or adjusted under 35 U.S.C. 154(b) by 0 days.
- (21) Appl. No.: 09/312,318

\

- (22) Filed: May 14, 1999
- (51) Int. Cl.⁷ H04Q 7/20
- (52) U.S. Cl. 455/458; 455/67.7; 455/567
- (58) Field of Search 455/31.1, 31.2,
 - 455/38.2, 38.4, 38.5, 575, 226.1, 226.2, 227, 67.1, 67.3, 67.7, 421, 458, 567; 340/870.09,
 - 573.4, 582, 571, 506, 519, 540, 545.4

(56) References Cited

U.S. PATENT DOCUMENTS

4,603,325 A	* 7/1986	Marino et al 340/539
4,871,997 A	 10/1989 	Adriaenssens et al 340/539
5,357,560 A	* 10/1994	Nykerk 379/59
5,448,567 A	 9/1995 	Dighe et al
5,467,341 A	* 11/1995	Matsukane et al 370/17
5,471,650 A	 11/1995 	Vexler et al 455/69
5,546,411 A	 8/1996 	Leitch et al
5,557,259 A	 9/1996 	Musa 340/573
5,603,088 A	 2/1997 	Gorday et al 455/53.1
5,809,414 A	 9/1998 	Coverdale et al 455/421
5,810,201 A	 9/1998 	Besse et al 222/39
5.892.447 A	 4/1999 	Wilkinson 340/573.4
5.963.131 A	• 10/1999	D'Angelo et al 340/568.1

5,966,655 A * 10/1999 Hardouin 455/418

US 6,408,187 B1

Jun. 18, 2002

* cited by examiner

(10) Patent No.:

(45) Date of Patent:

Primary Examiner-William Trost

Assistant Examiner—Congvan Tran (74) Attorney, Agent, or Firm—Hickman Palermo Truong & Becker, LLP; Bobby K. Truong

(57) ABSTRACT

A method and apparatus are disclosed for automatically determining the behavior of a communications device based upon the likelihood that a user is within relatively close proximity to the communications device. The apparatus comprises one or more sensors, one or more behavioral mechanisms, and a behavior determining mechanism. The sensors (which may, for example, be mechanical, audio, heat, or motion sensors) provide indications as to the likelihood that a user is within relatively close proximity to the communications device. These indications are received by the behavior determining mechanism, and in response, the behavior determining mechanism determines, based upon the indications, one or more appropriate behaviors for the apparatus. The behavior determining mechanism then causes one or more of the behavioral mechanisms to carry out the appropriate behaviors. By taking into account the likelihood that a user is within relatively close proximity to the communications device, the apparatus of the present invention enables the communications device to adapt its behavior to conform to its immediate environment. Thus, for example, if a communications device is situated in a room in which a meeting is being conducted, it will not issue an audio alert in response to an incoming communication. Instead, it will issue an alternate alert, such as a visual alert or a vibrating alert, to avoid disrupting the meeting. This and many other applications are possible with the present invention.

27 Claims, 3 Drawing Sheets



08/04/2004, EAST Version: 1.4.1


Fig. 1

U.S. Patent

• • •

Sheet 2 of 3

	110
SENSOR/STATUS	BEHAVIOR
MECHANICAL SENSOR (AFFIRMATIVE)	VIBRATE; FORWARD
MECHANICAL SENSOR (NEGATIVE)	VISUAL ALERT; AUDIO ALERT
AUDIO SENSOR (AFFIRMATIVE)	VIBRATE; VISUAL ALERT
AUDIO SENSOR (NEGATIVE)	AUDIO ALERT; FORWARD
MOTION SENSOR (AFFIRMATIVE)	VIBRATE; VISUAL ALERT
MOTION SENSOR (NEGATIVE)	AUDIO ALERT; FORWARD
HEAT SENSOR (AFFIRMATIVE)	VIBRATE; VISUAL ALERT
HEAT SENSOR (NEGATIVE)	AUDIO ALERT; FORWARD
AUDIO SENSOR (AFFIRMATIVE) & MOTION SENSOR (AFFIRMATIVE)	VIBRATE; VISUAL ALERT; FORWARD
AUDIO SENSOR (AFFIRMATIVE) & MOTION SENSOR (NEGATIVE)	VIBRATE; VISUAL ALERT; AUDIO ALERT; FORWARD
•••	•••
Fig. 2	



08/04/2004, EAST Version: 1.4.1

METHOD AND APPARATUS FOR DETERMINING THE BEHAVIOR OF A COMMUNICATIONS DEVICE BASED UPON ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

1

• .

BACKGROUND

This invention relates generally to communications systems and more particularly to a method and apparatus for determining the behavior of a communications device based upon the current proximity of a user to the device.

Due to improved technology, lower cost, and larger service areas, the use of portable communications devices, such as mobile telephones and pagers, has greatly proliferated in recent years. One of the factors that has contributed to the popularity of portable communications devices has been the freedom that they afford their users. With portable communications devices, people are no longer required to stay in particular locations to wait for important phone calls. Rather, they are free to conduct their lives and their business as usual, knowing that they can almost always be reached by way of their portable devices. With mobile phones and pagers, busy executives are able to conduct business even when they are in their cars, in a plane, etc., and field personnel are able to work in the field without being "out of 25 touch" with the home office.

While portable communications devices do offer significant mobility advantages, they do not come without their drawbacks. One of the drawbacks is that of untimely interruption and disruption. For example, it is not an unusual occurrence for a mobile phone or a pager to ring or beep during an important meeting. When this happens, it disrupts the flow of the meeting and, in many instances, annoys the participants of the meeting. If several of the participants have portable communications devices (which is not uncommon), and if each device rings or beeps even once, the flow and the effectiveness of the meeting can be significantly disrupted and even undermined.

Some device manufacturers have tried to alleviate this problem by providing a vibrating mechanism with their 40 devices which allows the devices to alert a user of an incoming communication by vibrating instead of ringing or beeping. While this mechanism does minimize the disruption caused by audio alerts, it is effective only if the user remembers to invoke it prior to the meeting. If the user forgets to invoke vibrating mode, then the audio alert of the portable device will sound and disrupt the meeting in the same manner as before. Hence, vibrating mode in and of itself is not an adequate solution. What is needed instead is a mechanism that automatically determines, based upon 50 certain factors, how a communications device should behave at any particular time. Such a mechanism is not believed to be currently available.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is based, at least partially, upon the observation that much of the proper behavior of a communications device can be determined based upon whether a user is within relatively close proximity to the device. For example, if a communications device is attached to the belt 60 of a user and hence is within close proximity to the user, then there is no need for the device to produce an audio alert when an incoming communication is received. Instead, a vibration or a visual alert (e.g. a flashing light or a display) will suffice. On the other hand, if the user is not close to the 65 device, then an audio alert or another action (such as forwarding the communication to another device) may be

appropriate. As this discussion shows, the proximity of a user to the communications device is often determinative of the proper behavior of the device. Based upon this observation, the present invention provides a mechanism for automatically determining the behavior of a communications device based upon the likelihood that a user is within relatively close proximity to the communications device.

According to one embodiment, an apparatus of the present invention comprises one or more sensors, one or more behavioral mechanisms, and a behavior determining mechanism. Each sensor (which may, for example, be a mechanical, audio, heat, or motion sensor) monitors the environment surrounding the communications device and provides an indication as to the likelihood that a user is within relatively close proximity to the communications device. For purposes of the present invention, a sensor is required to provide only an indication of likelihood that a user is within relatively close proximity to the communications device; it need not make an absolute determination as to the presence of a user. This indication of likelihood is used by the behavior determining mechanism to determine the behavior of the communications device.

More specifically, the behavior determining mechanism receives the indications from the sensors and, based upon the indications, determines one or more appropriate behaviors for the communications device. In one embodiment, this determination is made by consulting a behavioral table which sets forth the behaviors of the communications device under specific indications conditions. The values in the behavioral table can be specified by a user. This allows the user to customize the behavior of the communications device.

Once the one or more appropriate behaviors for the communications device have been determined, the behavior determining mechanism causes the one or more behavioral mechanisms to carry out the appropriate behaviors. This may, for example, involve activating a vibrating alert mechanism to cause the communications device to vibrate, or activating a visual alert mechanism to cause a message to be displayed or a light to flash, or activating a communication forwarding mechanism to cause a communication to be forwarded to another communications device, or causing an audio alert mechanism to activate or not activate. These and many other behaviors and behavioral mechanisms are possible. Which behaviors are carried out will depend upon the likelihood that a user is within relatively close proximity to the communications device. By taking user proximity into account, the present invention enables the communications device to automatically adapt its behavior to conform to its immediate environment.

BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

FIG. 1 is a block diagram representation of a communications device wherein one embodiment of the present invention is implemented.

FIG. 2 illustrates a table in which behavioral determining information is stored in accordance with one embodiment of the present invention.

FIG. 3 is a flow diagram illustrating the operation of the present invention.

DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE EMBODIMENT(s)

With reference to FIG. 1, there is shown a communications device 100 in which one embodiment of the present

invention is implemented. For purposes of the present invention, communications device 100 may be any device capable of sending and/or receiving communications and/or information, including but not limited to, a telephone (mobile or land line), a pager, an electronic mail enabled device, a facsimile machine, a computer (portable or nonportable), and audio/video conferencing equipment.

3

• ..

Communications device 100 comprises a main bus 102 and a plurality of components coupled to the main bus 102, including a processor 104 and a non-volatile memory 106. 10 Non-volatile memory 106 contains therein a set of behavior determining instructions 108 which are executed by the processor 104 to carry out the methodology of the present invention, and a set of behavior determining data 110. As explained further below, the data 110 is user specifiable, and is used to determine the appropriate behavior for the communications device 100. Together, the processor 104 and the instructions 108 form a behavior determining mechanism. In this embodiment, the functionality of the invention is derived from the processor 104 executing the program 20 instructions 108; however, it should be noted that the invention is not so limited. If so desired, the functionality of the present invention may be achieved by way of hardwired logic components. This and other modifications are within the scope of the invention.

Communications device 100 further comprises one or more sensors 112 coupled to the main bus 102. The purpose of the sensors 112 is to monitor the environment surrounding the communications device 100 and to provide indications as to the likelihood that a user is currently within relatively close proximity to the device 100. These indications allow the behavior determining mechanism (the processor 104 executing the instructions 108) to determine the likelihood that a user is actually within relatively close proximity to the device 100, and to determine the behavior of the device 100 accordingly.

According to the present invention, a sensor 112 may be any of a number of different mechanisms. For example, sensor 112 may be a mechanical sensor such as a button on a belt clip which is depressed when the communications device 100 is not clipped to a belt, and released when the communications device 100 is clipped to a belt. When the button is released, thereby indicating that the device 100 is clipped to a belt, and hence indicating a likelihood that the device 100 is within relatively close proximity to a user, the mechanical sensor 112 provides an affirmative indication of likelihood. On the other hand, if the button is depressed, then the mechanical sensor 112 provides a negative indication of likelihood.

The sensor 112 may also be an audio sensor which senses audio signals (voices, noise, sounds, etc.) around the communications device 100. If audio signals of sufficient strength are detected, then there is a likelihood that a user is within relatively close proximity to the communications device 100. Hence, the audio sensor provides an affirmative indication of likelihood. On the other hand, if no audio signals or very low-strength audio signals are detected, then the audio sensor 112 provides a negative indication of likelihood.

The sensor 112 may also be a heat sensor for detecting the body heat of a nearby user. If sufficient body heat is detected, thereby indicating a likelihood that a user is within relatively close proximity to the communications device 100, then the heat sensor 112 provides an affirmative indication of likeli-65 hood. Otherwise, the beat sensor 112 provides a negative indication of likelihood.

In addition, the sensor 112 may be a motion sensor for detecting motion around the vicinity of the communicationsdevice 100. If motion is sensed, thereby indicating a likelihood that a user is within relatively close proximity to the device 100, then the motion sensor 112 outputs an affirmative indication of likelihood. If no motion is sensed, then the motion sensor 112 outputs a negative indication of likelihood.

Further, the sensor 112 may be a proximity sensor, such as an infrared based sensor, for detecting whether an object is within a certain distance of the sensor 112. If so, then there is a likelihood that a user is within relatively close proximity to the device 100. In such a case, the proximity sensor 112 outputs an affirmative indication of likelihood. If not, then the proximity sensor 112 outputs a negative indication of likelihood.

The above are just some of the possible embodiments of the sensor 112. Many more are possible. For purposes of the present invention, any sensing mechanism that is capable of providing an indication as to the likelihood that a user is within relatively close proximity to the communications device 100 can be used as the sensor 112. A point to note regarding the sensors 112 is that, in the present invention, they are not required to make an absolute determination as 25 to the presence of a user. Rather, they need to provide only an indication of likelihood that a user is within relatively close proximity to the communications device. Because the sensors 112 deal with likelihood, and hence probabilities, there is a potential for error (i.e. the sensors may provide an affirmative indication of likelihood even when no user is within close proximity to the communications device). To lessen the possibility for error, multiple types of sensors 112 (e.g. an audio sensor and a motion sensor) may be used to check for multiple indicia of a user's presence. This is within the scope of the present invention.

In addition to the sensors 112, communications device 100 further comprises a user interface 114, and a communications mechanism 116, both of which are coupled to the main bus 102. The user interface 114 comprises all components necessary for receiving input from and providing output to the user, including for example a microphone, a speaker, and a keypad. The interface 114 further comprises mechanisms for alerting users of incoming communications, including an audio alert mechanism (e.g. a ringer), a vibrating mechanism, and a visual alert mechanism (e.g. a display or a blinking or flashing light). As described further below, these mechanisms may be invoked as behavioral mechanisms to carry out appropriate behaviors for the communications device 100. As to the communications mechanism 116, it comprises all components necessary for communicating with other entities (such as base stations and other communications devices) including a transmitting mechanism and a receiving mechanism. As described further below, mechanism 116 may also be invoked as a behavioral mechanism to carry out appropriate behaviors for device 100. In addition to user interface 114 and communications mechanism 116, device 100 may further comprise other behavioral mechanisms, each mechanism imparting a certain behavior to the communications device 100. Such other behavioral mechanisms are within the scope of the present invention.

As mentioned previously, the particular behavior or behaviors carried out by the communications device 100 is determined by the behavior determining data 110 stored in the non-volatile memory 106. According to one embodiment, data 110 is freely specifiable by a user. By making data 110 user specifiable, the present invention

- .. .

5 enables a user to customize the behavior of the communications device 100. This aspect of the invention will be described in greater detail in a later section.

With reference to FIG. 2, there is shown one embodiment of the behavior determining data 110, wherein the data takes the form of a behavioral table 110 having two columns: (1) a sensor/status column; and (2) a behavior column. In each row of the behavioral table 110, there is stored an identification of a particular sensor (e.g. the mechanical sensor) and an indication status associated with that sensor (e.g. affirmative or negative), and one or more behaviors. This information specifies how the communications device 100 should behave in response to specific indications of likelihood from specific sensors.

For example, if an audio sensor detects strong audio 15 signals around the communications device 100 and hence, outputs an affirmative indication of likelihood, then in response to a particular event, such as an incoming communication, the communications device 100 should, according to table 110, first vibrate to alert the user, and then if the user does not respond within a certain period of time, to activate a visual alert. No audio alert is sounded. On the other hand, if the audio sensor detects no audio signals around the communications device and hence, outputs a negative indication of likelihood, then the communications device 100 should, according to table 110, respond to a particular event such as an incoming communication by first sounding an audio alert, and then if the user does not respond within a certain period of time, forwarding the communication to another device. In this manner, the behavioral table 110 enables the communications device 100 to adapt its behavior, based upon the likelihood that a user is within relatively close proximity to the device 100, to conform to its immediate environment.

As an enhancement, the information in the sensor/status column may contain the identification and status indication for multiple sensors. For example, as shown in the ninth row of table 110, the table 110 may specify that if both the audio sensor and the motion sensor output affirmative indications of likelihood, then the proper behavior for the communications device 100 should be to vibrate first, then to activate a visual alert, and then to forward a communication. The advantage of including multiple sensors/status information in the same row is that it allows the communications device 100 to take multiple types of sensors into account in determining the appropriate behavior for the device 100. As mentioned previously, the more types of sensors that are taken into account, the greater the chance of making a correct determination as to whether a user is actually within close proximity to the communications device 100. This is within the scope of the present invention.

With reference to the flow diagram of FIG. 3, the operation of the apparatus of the present invention will now be described. Under direction of the behavior determining set instructions 108 stored in volatile memory 106, the processor 104 begins operation by granting (302) the user an opportunity to initialize or update the behavioral table 110. This gives the user the opportunity to customize the behavior of the communications device 100. If the user indicates that he does not wish to update the behavioral table 110, then processor 104 proceeds to (311). Otherwise, processor 104 proceeds to (306).

Processor 104 begins the update process by prompting (306) the user for input. This is carried out by first displaying 65 to the user via the user interface 114 an identification of a sensor 112 available in the communications device 100 and

6

a possible indication status for that sensor (e.g. mechanical sensor (affirmative)), and then providing the user a list of choices for possible behaviors (e.g. vibrate, audio alert, visual alert, forward). This in effects asks the user what the user would like the communications device 100 to do if that particular sensor produces that particular indication of likelibood. In response, the user selects via the user interface 114 one or more of the choices of possible behaviors. This user input is received (308) by the processor 104 and stored (310) into the behavioral table 110 in the non-volatile memory 106. In this manner, one of the rows of the behavioral table 110 is updated. Processor 104 repeats (306), (308), and (310) until the user has specified behaviors for all possible indications conditions (i.e. for all sensors in the communications device 100 and all possible status indications for the sensors). If multiple types of sensors are taken into account as is the case with the ninth and tenth entries in the table 110 of FIG. 2, then behaviors will need to be specified for combinations of sensors and sensor status indications. The behavioral table 110 is thus populated.

Thereafter, processor 104 proceeds to (311) to monitor for the occurrence of a particular event, such as the reception of an incoming communication. When such an event is detected, processor 104 receives (312) indications of likelihood from the various sensors in the communications device. These indications of likelihood provide to the processor 104 a sense of the likelihood that a user is within relatively close proximity to the communications device 100. Using these indications, processor 104 consults the behavioral table 110 to determine (314) the appropriate

behavior or behaviors for the communications device 100. Once the appropriate behaviors have been determined, processor 104 causes (316) the appropriate behavioral mechanisms to carry out the appropriate behaviors. This may involve, for example: (1) activating the vibrating mechanism in the user interface 114 to cause the communications device 100 to vibrate; (2) activating the visual alert mechanism in the user interface 114 to cause a message to be displayed or a light to flash; (3) activating or not activating the audio alert mechanism in the user interface 114; or (4) activating the communications mechanism 116 to contact a base station to instruct the base station to forward the incoming communication to another communications device. These and other behaviors are within the scope of the present invention.

In the manner described, the apparatus of the present invention effectively adjusts the behavior of the communications device 100 based upon whether a user is likely to be within relatively close proximity to the device 100. By doing so, the present invention enables the device 100 to automatically adapt its behavior to conform to its immediate environment. Thus, for example, if the communications device 100 is situated in a room in which a meeting is being conducted, then the device 100 will not ring in response to an incoming communication. Instead, it will use a less disruptive alerting mechanism, such as a vibrating mechanism or a visual alert mechanism. As a result, the meeting is not disrupted. This is just one of the advantageous uses of the present invention. There are many others. These other uses will be clear to those of ordinary skill in the art with the benefit of this disclosure.

Thus far, the present invention has been described with an emphasis towards determining whether a user is within relatively close proximity to the communications device While this is an advantageous implementation of the concept of the invention, it should be noted that the invention may be applied more broadly. Specifically, the present invention

US 6,408,187 B1

7

· .,

may be generalized to automatically adjusting the behavior of a communications device based upon the surrounding environment in which the communications device is situ-ated. This may take into account more factors than just whether a user is within close proximity to the communications device. As an example, the present invention may be used to automatically adjust the volume of a ringer based upon the environment surrounding the communications device. For example, if an audio sensor senses a high amount of noise around the communications device, then the behav-10 ior determining mechanism 108 may increase the volume of a ringer to enable the ringer to be heard over the noise. As a further example, if a proximity sensor senses that the communications device is in a confined space (such as a purse), then the behavior determining mechanism 108 may 15 increase the volume of the ringer to enable the ringer to be heard despite the fact that the communications device is in a purse. Neither of these factors are closely related to whether a user is within close proximity to the communications device. As this discussion shows, the present invention is quite general. It may be applied to any situation in 20 which it is desirable to adjust the behavior of a communications device based upon the environment in which the device is currently situated. All such applications are within the scope of the present invention.

At this point, it should be noted that although the inven-25 tion has been described with reference to specific embodiments, it should not be construed to be so limited. Various modifications can be made by those of ordinary skill in the art with the benefit of this disclosure without departing from the spirit of the invention. Thus, the invention should not be limited by the specific embodiments used to illustrate it but only by the scope of the appended claims.

What is claimed is:

1. A method implemented by a communications device for alerting a user of the communications device to an ³⁵ incoming communication, comprising:

- receiving an incoming communication intended for the user of the communications device;
- determining one or more environmental conditions of a 40 current environment surrounding the communications device:
- selecting, based upon said environmental conditions, one or more appropriate mechanisms, from a plurality of alert mechanisms, to invoke to alert the user of said 45 incoming communication; and
- alerting the user by invoking said one or more appropriate mechanisms.

2. The method of claim 1, wherein said incoming communication comprises one of the members of a group 50 consisting of: a telephone call, a page, an audio transmission, a video transmission, a data transmission, and a text message

3. The method of claim 1, wherein said environmental conditions comprise one or more of the members of a group 55 consisting of: amount of noise around the communications device, amount of body heat near the communications device, motion around the communications device, whether there are objects within close proximity to the communications device, and whether the user is in physical contact with 60 the communications device.

4. The method of claim 1, wherein determining comprises:

receiving information from at least one environmental sensor.

5. The method of claim 4, wherein determining comprises:

8

receiving information from a plurality of environmental sensors

6. The method of claim 1, wherein alerting comprises:

invoking a plurality of said appropriate mechanisms.

7. The method of claim 1, wherein:

determining comprises:

determining whether the communications device is in physical contact with the user;

selecting comprises:

- selecting a mechanical alert mechanism if the communications device is in physical contact with the user; and
- alerting comprises:

invoking said mechanical alert mechanism.

8. The method of claim 7, wherein said mechanical alert mechanism comprises a vibration mechanism.

9. The method of claim 1, wherein:

determining comprises:

determining a noise level for said current environment; selecting comprises:

selecting a mechanical alert mechanism if said noise level exceeds a certain threshold; and

alerting comprises:

invoking said mechanical alert mechanism.

10. The method of claim 1, wherein:

determining comprises:

- determining a noise level for said current environment; selecting comprises:
- selecting a visual alert mechanism if said noise level exceeds a certain threshold; and

alerting comprises:

invoking said visual alert mechanism.

11. The method of claim 1, wherein:

determining comprises:

determining an amount of body heat in said current environment;

selecting comprises:

selecting a mechanical alert mechanism if said amount of body heat exceeds a certain threshold; and

alerting comprises:

invoking said mechanical alert mechanism.

12. The method of claim 1, wherein:

determining comprises:

determining there is motion in said current environment;

selecting comprises:

selecting a mechanical alert mechanism if there is motion in said current environment; and

alerting comprises:

invoking said mechanical alert mechanism.

13. The method of claim 1, wherein:

determining comprises:

determining there is motion in said current environment;

selecting comprises:

selecting a visual alert mechanism if there is motion in said current environment; and

alerting comprises:

invoking said visual alert mechanism.

14. The method of claim 1, wherein:-

determining comprises:

determining whether said current environment is a confined space;

selecting comprises:

. . . .

selecting an audio alert mechanism if said current environment is a confined space; and

9

- alerting comprises: invoking said audio alert mechanism at a higher than 5 average volume.
- 15. The method of claim 1, further comprising:
- determining whether the user has received said incoming communication; and
- forwarding said incoming communication to another communications device if the user has not received said incoming communication.
- 16. A communications device, comprising:
- a communications mechanism for receiving an incoming 15 communication intended for a user of said communications device;
- one or more sensors, each sensor providing an indication of one or more environmental conditions of a current environment surrounding said communications device; 20
- a plurality of alert mechanisms for alerting the user to said incoming communication; and
- a behavioral determining mechanism coupled to said one or more sensors and said plurality of alert mechanisms, said behavior determining mechanism selecting, based upon said one or more environmental conditions, one or more of said plurality of alert mechanisms as being appropriate mechanisms for alerting the user to said incoming communication, and invoking said appropriate mechanisms.

17. The communications device of claim 16, wherein said incoming communication comprises one of the members of a group consisting of: a telephone call, a page, an audio transmission, a video transmission, a data transmission, and a text message.

18. The communications device of claim 16, wherein said environmental conditions comprise one or more of the members of a group consisting of: amount of noise around the communications device, amount of body heat near the communications device, motion around the communications device, whether there are objects within close proximity to the communications device, and whether the user is in physical contact with the communications device.

19. The communications device of claim 16, wherein said communications device comprises a plurality of sensors, with each sensor providing an indication of a different environmental condition.

20. The communications device of claim 16, wherein said one or more sensors comprises a mechanical sensor for sensing whether said communications device is in physical ⁵⁰ contact with the user, wherein said plurality of alert mechannisms comprises a mechanical alert mechanism, and wherein said behavior determining mechanism selects and invokes said mechanical alert mechanism if said mechanical sensor indicates that said communications device is in physical contact with the user.

21. The communications device of claim 16, wherein said one or more sensors comprises an audio sensor for sensing a noise level for said current environment, wherein said plurality of alert mechanisms comprises a mechanical alert mechanism, and wherein said behavior determining mechanism selects and invokes said mechanical alert mechanism if said audio sensor indicates that said noise level exceeds a certain threshold.

22. The communications device of claim 16, wherein said one or more sensors comprises an audio sensor for sensing a noise level for said current environment, wherein said plurality of alert mechanisms comprises a visual alert mechanism, and wherein said behavior determining mechanism selects and invokes said visual alert mechanism if said audio sensor indicates that said noise level exceeds a certain threshold.

23. The communications device of claim 16, wherein said one or more sensors comprises a heat sensor for sensing body heat in said current environment, wherein said plurality of alert mechanisms comprises a mechanical alert mechanism, and wherein said behavior determining mechanism selects and invokes said mechanical alert mechanism if said heat sensor indicates that said body heat exceeds a certain threshold.

24. The communications device of claim 16, wherein said one or more sensors comprises a motion sensor for sensing motion in said current environment, wherein said plurality of alert mechanisms comprises a mechanical alert mechanism, and wherein said behavior determining mechanism selects and invokes said mechanical alert mechanism if said motion sensor indicates that there is motion in said current environment.

25. The communications device of claim 16, wherein said one or more sensors comprises a motion sensor for sensing motion in said current environment, wherein said plurality of alert mechanisms comprises a visual alert mechanism, and wherein said behavior determining mechanism selects and invokes said visual alert mechanism if said motion sensor indicates that there is motion in said current envi-

ronment. 26. The communications device of claim 16, wherein said one or more sensors comprises a proximity sensor for sensing whether said current environment is a confined space, wherein said plurality of alert mechanisms comprises an audio alert mechanism, and wherein said behavior determining mechanism selects and invokes said audio alert mechanism at a higher than average volume if said proximity sensor indicates that said current environment is a confined space.

27. The communications device of claim 16, wherein said behavior determining mechanism determines whether the user has received said incoming communication, and if not, said behavior determining mechanism causing said communications mechanism to forward said incoming communication to another communications device.

* * * * *

- Ania					2522 1071-07
OIP	QOCKET NO. R.L.	MCDOWELL 20-7	6	PATENT	
OCT 0 7 20	IN THE	UNITED STATES	PATENT AND TRADEMARK OFFI	CE	
& TRADEMA	Fir re application of:			RECEIVE	-D
		Richard L. McDow	ell, et al.	OCTOSZO	12
-	Serial No.:	09/967,140		Technology Center	2600
	Filed:	September 28, 2001			
'n	For:	A PROXIMITY RE WITH A PORTABI OF OPERATION T	GULATION SYSTEM FOR USE LE CELL PHONE AND A METHOD HEREOF	DROP	
	Group:	2681			7170
-	Examiner:	N/A		UCT 1 0 200	2
	Commissioner for Pa	tents	a an		
-	Washington, D. C. 2	20231	I hereby certify that this correspondence is being deposited with the United first class may be an envelope addressed to: Commissioner for Patents. Was Control of the control of the control of the control of the Change of the control of the control of the control of the Change of the person signing the certificate)	J States Postal Service as shington, D.C. 20231, on	· · · · · ·
	Sir:				

CERTIFICATION FOR INFORMATION DISCLOSURE STATEMENT (37 C.F.R. § 1.97(e))

This certification is being made for the Information Disclosure Statement accompanying this certification.

i X

Î

I hereby certify that each item of information contained in the Information Disclosure Statement was cited in a communication from a foreign patent office in a counterpart foreign application not more than three months prior to the filing of the statement. --;~~·· --

As attorney for the Applicant, I am signing below on the basis of the information supplied by an individual designated in § 1.56(c).

Respectfully submitted, HITT GAINES & BOISBRUN, P.C.

Glenn W. Boisbrun Registration No. 39,615

D Date:

P.O. Box 832570 Richardson, Texas 75083 (972) 480-8800

-2-

(19)	Europäisches Patentamt European Patent Office Office européen des brevets	(11) EP 0 977 304 A1
(12)	DEMANDE DE B	REVET EUROPEEN
(43)	Date de publication: 02.02.2000 Bulletin 2000/05	(51) Int. Cl. ⁷ : H01Q 1/24 , H04B 1/38, H01Q 3/24, H01Q 3/28
(21)	Numéro de dépôt: 99202385.3	
(22)	Date de dépôt: 20.07.1999	
(84)	Etats contractants désignés: AT BE CH CY DE DK ES FI FR GB GR IE IT LI LU MC NL PT SE Etats d'extension désignés: AL LT LV MK RO SI	(72) Inventeurs: • Werling, Thierry 75008 Paris (FR) • Bruzzone, Raul 75008 Paris (FR)
(30)	Priorité: 28.07.1998 FR 9809651	(74) Mandataire:
(71)	Demandeur: Koninklijke Philips Electronics N.V. 5621 BA Eindhoven (NL)	Société Civile "S.P.I.D.", 156, Boulevard Haussmann

(54) Appareil de communications, équipement radio mobile, station de base et procédé de contrôle de puissance

(57) L'invention concerne un appareil de communication de signaux radioélectriques équipé d'une structure d'antenne directive, notamment un radiotéléphone ou une station de base d'un système de téléphonie mobile. L'appareil comporte des moyens de mesure de paramètres d'environnement et des moyens de contrôle d'émission pour réguler la puissance d'émission de la structure d'antenne par rapport à la direction d'émission, en fonction de l'environnement. L'invention permet, par des moyens peu coûteux, de limiter considérablement la puissance des radiations nocives émises par un équipement radio en direction de tissus humains.

)

Application : radiotéléphones, stations radio de bases.

t () T

٤.)

EP 0 977 304 A1



Best Available Copy

Printed by Xerox (UK) Business Services 2.16.7/3.6

يكتحي ماملة

Indition to the characteristic sector of the sector of

1.

Description

- des moyens d'émission 7 réception couplés à utilé d' structuré d'antenne présentant un diagrammé d'édua rayonnement privilégiant certaines directions en a
- par uniorgane de contrôlé pour modifier ledit/diagramme de rayonnement.

[0002] Elle concerne également un équipement radio mobile susceptible de communiquer avec au moins une⁶⁴ 15 station radio de base d'un système de télécommunications radioélectriques, leditiéquipement comportant:

- des moyens d'émission : / réception de signaux
 aradioélectriques couplés à une structure d'antenne le 20
 présentant un diagramme de rayonnement privilé=11
 giant certaines directions en émission et structure
- councilispositifie de régulation de puissance commandé⁽³⁾ expár un organezde contrôle pour modifier leditidiaangramme de ràyonnement. Source les contrôles autores 255 255

[0003] L'invention concerne encore une station tadio : de base d'un système de télécommunications radioélectriques susceptible de communiquer avec au moins : unterminal radio mobile, fadité station comportant : 1000 30%

- findes: moyens ad'émission // réception de signaux aradioélectriques couplés à une structure d'antenne présentant: un diagramme de rayonnement privilé-sigiant certaines directions en émission et al. 2 in tal. 33
- juun dispositif de régulation de puissance commanders par un organe de contrôle pour modifier-leditidias^ ogramme de rayonnementer de contrôle de la contrôle de la (25.0)

 May an ideal reaction of plately later to the mean of it [0004] Elle concerne enfin un procédé de contrôle de 40 puissance pour contrôler la puissance rayonnée dans une direction donnée par une pluralité d'antennes directtives ayant des puissances d'émission respectives. [0005] ... L'invention a de nombreuses applications dans le domaine des télécommunications par voié radio; 45 notamment en radiotéléphonie. Elle s'applique particulièrement dans les systèmes, dits de troisième génération, fonctionnant selon une norme de type UMTS (de l'anglais Universal Mobile Telecommunications System) utilisant la technique de multiplexage l'arge bande à 50 répartition par code CDMA (de l'anglais Code Division Multiple Access) Des équipements prévus pour de tels systèmes comportent une pluralité d'antennes directives susceptibles d'émettre des radiations nocives h absorbées par des tissus humains situés à proximité de 55 ces appareils: a reaction of a contract the function of [0006] La demande de brevet européen publiée en langue allemande sous le numéro EP 752 735 décrition

appareil du genre mentionné dans lé paragraphe introductif comportant des moyens pour limiter la puissance des radiations absorbées par le tissu humain. Il comporte un arrangement d'antennes électriquèment relié à une unité de contrôle pour réguler individuellement la puissance d'émission de chaque antenne en fonction de la variation calculée entre l'impédance mesurée au niveau de l'antenne et une valeur de référence correspondant à son impédance en champ libre. Cette différence représente une mesure de la puissance de radiation absorbée par le tissu humain.

2

[0007] SLà présente invêntion propose des moyens pour éviter l'émission d'ondes radioélectriques en direction de tissus húmains, plus simples à mettre en oeuvre et plus efficaces que ceux décrits dans le document cité. Pour cela, mest-prévu un appareil tel que mentionné dans le paragraphe introductif, rémarqu'able en ce qu'il comprend un dispositif de détection de proximité pour mesurer au moins un paramètre d'environnement et fournir à l'organe de contrôle une indication de proximité pour commander le dispositif de régulation de puissance, et al contrôle une ceux

[0008] Selon une caractéristique importante de l'invention, la structure d'antenne comprend une pluralité d'antennes directives ayant chacune une puissance d'émission dans une direction donnée et le dispositif de régulation de puissance comporte des moyens de contrôle de puissance pour réguler la puissance d'émission des antennes directives.

[0009] Selon une autre caractéristique de l'invention, les moyens de contrôle de puissance comprènnent des moyens de commutation pour activer / désactiver sélectivement une ou plusieurs antennes dirèctives.

[0010] Selon deux modes de réalisation particuliers de l'invention, le dispositif de détection de proximité comprend un détecteur de témpérature et / ou un détecteur d'humidité permettant de distinguer, parmi les différents obstacles aux propagations radioélectriques, une présence humaine d'un obstacle quelconque. Un objet de l'invention étant de limiter l'émission de radiations nocives pour la santé de l'utilisateur, il est très avantageux d'utiliser de tels détecteurs de proximité.

[0011] Ces détecteurs présentent en outre deux avantages supplémentaires. De type passif, ils sont inoffensifs pour l'utilisateur puisqu'ils n'émettent aucune onde radio. De plus, ils rendent inutiles les mesures de puissance d'émission et les calculs de différence préconisés par la méthode précédemment citée de calcul de la variation de puissance. Ceux-ci sont non seulement consommateurs d'énergie mais également nocifs, puisqu'ils impliquent d'émettre' à une certaine puissance pour faire les mesures avant d'éffectuer éventuellement un contrôle: de puissance destiné à limiter l'absorption de radiations par l'utilisateur.

[0012] La description suivante, faite en regard des dessins ci-annexés, le tout donne à titre d'exemple non limitatif fera bien comprendre comment l'invention peut être réalisée. La figure 1 est un schéma bloc d'un appareil de communications selon l'invention.

3

radio mobile selon l'invention. Champer de la contrata La figure 3 estrun schéma bloc d'un mode de réaliziones estion particulier, de l'équipément représenté sa la grigure 2. La figure 1 estruncion de la contrata de

[0013] L'exemple représenté à la figure 1 peut être ; intégré dans un radiotéléphone utilisant plusieurs antennes directives en émission. Il comprend un dispo-ja sitif d'émission / réception 11, couplé à une pluratité - 15 d'antennes directives 12 à 15 (ayant un diagramme de rayonnement privilégiant certaines directions en émission). Chaque antenne est électriquement connectée à un dispositif de régulation de puissance 16, commandé par un organe de contrôle 17, Un tel organe peut être , 20 x constitué par un microcontrôleur µC convenablement programmé, comprenant une mémoire morte program, mable, une mémoire vive, une interface d'entrées / sor-or ties munie de convertisseurs analogique / digital et digital / analogique ainsi que de tous dispositifs néces- ; 25 saires à l'interface avec les différents éléments périphériques. genue 1 er. 3- 1 1.111

[0014] Un détecteur de proximité 18 relié à l'organe de contrôle 17 détecte la présence de tissus humains à proximité de l'appareil en mesurant un paramètre 30 d'environnement, tel que la température ou le degré d'humidité, et transmet à l'organe de contrôle 17 un coefficient de proximité caractéristique de l'objet détecté. Un tel détecteur est ainsi capable de différen-o. cier un corps humain présentant un certain coefficient , 35d'un autre corps ayant un coefficient différent, La valeur, de ce coefficient est analysée par l'organe de contrôle 17 et comparée à des valeurs de consigne stockées par exemple, en mémoire morte, pour déterminer, selon leurs directions d'émission privilégiées, quelles sont les 40 antennes directives dont la puissance d'émission doit ... être réduite et pour déclencher une commande appropriée du dispositif de régulation de puissance 16. [0015] Sous la commande de l'organe de contrôle 17, 6 le dispositif de régulation de puissance 16 sélectionne 45.1 une ou plusieurs antennes et ajuste leur puissance. d'émission en fonction des données fournies par le détecteur 18. i + ... an para tan tan tan [0016] En réception, les puissances générées étant considérablement puis faibles qu'en émission, toutes . 50 les directions de radiations, peuvent être, utilisées sans danger pour l'utilisateur.... - C.,

[0017] Selon un mode de réalisation préféré de l'invention, le détecteur de proximité 18 est un thermomètre à infrarouge de type passif, capable de mesurer. 55la température d'un corps à une distance d'environ une vingtaine, de centimètres du détecteur. Une variante consiste à utiliser un détecteur d'humidité.

ì

[0018] De préférence, le dispositif de régulation de puissance 16 comprend un dispositif de commutation (non représenté) commandé par l'organe de contrôle /1/3/ pour activer ou désactiven individuellement les anteneo nes sélectionnées et supprimer radicalement la contribution des antennes désactivées dont le diagramme de rayonnement présente un lobe dans la direction d'émission à éviter.

[0019] La figure 2 est une vue en perspective d'un radiotétéphone comprenantatione structure d'antenne fonctionnant en émission / réception dont le diagramme de rayonnement, schématisé par des løbes principaux, est représenté par des traits en pointillés. L'utilisation d'antennes distinctes en émission et en réception est, préconsée lorsque les bandes de fréquences utilisées respectivement pour l'émission et la réception sont trop éloignées, pour être compatibles avec la bande passante des antennes. En revanche, la taille de l'appareil doit-être adaptée; pour recevoir un grand nombre d'antennes, ce; qui est actuellement le cas des équipements fonctionnant à des fréquences de l'ordre du giga hertz.

[0020] ... L'exemple illustré par la figure 2 comprend un boîțier 20, un clavier 21, un écran de contrôle 22; un haut-parleur / écouteur 23. un microphone 24 et une structure d'antenne comprenant quatre antennes indépendantes directives en émission, situées à l'intérieur ?; du baîtier 20. Cesuantennes sont par exemple constituées de disques en céramique formant un diagramme de rayonnement dont les lobes principaux 25, 26, 27, 28 pointent vers quatre directions orthogonales. Au lieu d'un système à plusieurs antennes indépendamment contrôlables, on peut utiliser une antenne réseau miniaturisée.dentype.((ophased-array.)).ajustable.comme ¿celle décrite en idétails dans le manuel. (C. Mobile Antenna Systems Handbook ()), K. Fujimoto et al, Artech House in the 1994, pages 436-451 [0021] La figure 3 est un schéma bloo illustrant le fonctionnement du radiotéléphone représenté à la figure 2.

Les antennes 30 à 33 sont couplées d'une part, à desuit circuits d'émission / réception, Tx / Rx, au moyen d'unig duplexeur, et d'autre part à des commutateurs 34 à 37 ... commandés par un organe de contrôle µC en fonction : des informations qu'il recoit d'un détecteur de proximité. Les circuits d'émission / réception, connus de l'homme v du métier ne seront pas décrits ici. On rappelle simple-... ment qu'un circuit d'émission couplé à une structure d'antenne comporte au moins un amplificateur de puissance. Dans le cas d'une pluralité d'antennes d'émission of le radiotéléphone, doit comporter autant d'amplificateurs de puissance/et de circuits d'émission que d'antennes dont la puissance d'émission doit être : : contrôlée indépendamment de celle émise par les autres antennes . 4 11 [0022]): Selon un mode de réalisation préféré de l'invention, la détection par le détecteur de proximité 39;d'un tissu humain, déclenche la commande, par l'organe de contrôle µC, des commutateurs appropriés

كلاء العمينية

5 :

10

15

30

35

pour désactiver les antennes dont le diagramme de rayonnement pointe vers la tête de l'utilisateur. Dans l'exemple à quatre antennes représenté à la figure 2, l'antenne générant le lobe 27 devra en général être désactivée

5

[0023] Pour un usage dans un milieu de propagation favorisant les trajets multiples et / ou dans une région où la densité du réseau de stations de base est élevé, la suppression des antennes d'émission présentant leur lobe principal dans un hémisphère donné ne réduit pas de façon considérable la visibilité des stations de base situées dans cet hémisphère. En effet, dans le premier cas, les réflexions multiples des ondes augmentent leur probabilité d'atteindre leur cible et dans le deuxième cas, la communication peut être établie avec une autre station de base disponible. C'est pourquoi ce mode de réalisation convient particulièrement à une utilisation courante en milieu urbain. En revanche, pour toute autre utilisation, l'ajout d'une antenne omnidirectionnelle peut s'avérer utile pour éviter, le cas échéant, de perdre le contact avec la seule station de base disponible.

[0024] Selon un autre mode de réalisation, chaque antenne est reliée à un circuit d'émission propre et les commutateurs sont remplacés par des atténuateurs 25 commandés par l'organe de contrôle pour ajuster la puissance d'émission de chaque antenne en fonction du résultat de la détection de proximité. Ce mode de réalisation exige que chaque antenne soit reliée à un amplificateur de puissance ajustable. Les amplificateurs consommant beaucoup d'énergie, ce mode de réalisation est réservé aux équipements dont la consommation n'est pas critique, comme par exemple des stations de base d'un système de télécommunications mobile.

[0025] La figure 4 illustre un procédé de contrôle de puissance d'émission pouvant être réalisé par l'organe de contrôle 17 représenté à la figure 1, et intégré dans le radiotéléphone de la figure 2 pour contrôler la puissance émise par une structure d'antennes directives. 40 [0026] Le procédé débute à la case K0. A la case K1, on effectue une lecture de la puissance PEM émise par le radiotéléphone. Cette puissance peut être lue, par exemple, à la sortie de l'amplificateur de puissance du circuit d'émission. A la case K2, la valeur lue P_{FM} est 45 testée et comparée à une valeur de consigne P_{MAX} représentant la puissance de radiation maximale considérée comme inoffensive pour l'utilisateur. Si le résultat du test PEM > PMAX est négatif, le procédé se poursuit à la case K3 où toutes les antennes sont sélectionnées 50 . sans régulation de puissance. Si le résultat du test est positif, le procédé se poursuit à la case K4 avec une étape de mesure d'un paramètre d'environnement pour détecter une présence humaine à proximité de l'appareil. Selon le mode de réalisation préféré, cette étape 55 consiste à mesurer la température ambiante TB à l'aide d'un capteur à infrarouge sensible à une distance d'une vingtaine de centimètres environ. Le test effectué à la

case K5 constitue une étape de comparaison entre la mesure TB effectuée à l'étape précédente et des valeurs de consigne T_{MIN} et T_{MAX}. Si l'équation T_{MIN} < T_B < T_{MAX} est vérifiée, on passe à l'étape K6 pour sélectionner les antennes convenables et réguler leurs puissance d'émission. Sinon, on retourne à la case K3. [0027] On a ainsi décrit ét'illustré'à l'aide d'exemples un appareil de communications, un équipement téléphonique, une station de base ainsi qu'un procédé de contrôle de puissance pour modifier le diagramme de rayonnement d'une structure d'antenne en fonction d'un paramètre d'environnement. Bien entendu, des variantes de réalisation pourront être apportées sans sortir du cadre de l'invention, notamment en ce qui concerne le choix du paramètre d'environnement à détecter et de la structure d'antenne utilisée. ्राज्य मध्य के

 $\ldots, 2_{n}$ decospects, and a constraint Revendications' .,. EVER A DECLARK

- 20 1. Appareil de communication de signaux radioélectriques comportant : :
 - <·· . des moyens d'émission / réception couplés à une structure d'antenne présentant un diagramme de rayonnement privilégiant certaines directions en émission et
 - · · · un dispositif de régulation de puissance commandé par un organe de contrôle pour modifier i ledit diagramme de rayonnement,
 - · caractérisé en ce qu'il comprend un dispositif de 1.11 détection de proximité pour mesurer au moins un paramètre d'environnement et fournir à l'organe de contrôle une indication de proximité pour comman-
 - der le dispositif de régulation de puissance. 2 No. 5 Co. 1 1.1 1271
 - 2. Appareil selon la revendication 1, caractérisé en ce que la structure d'antenne comprend une pluralité d'antennes directives ayant chacune, une puissance d'émission dans une direction donnée et en · ce que le dispositif de régulation de puissance comporte des moyens de contrôle de puissance pour réguler" la puissance d'émission des antennes directives. a dama da
 - 3. Appareil selon la revendication 2, caractérisé en ce que les moyens de contrôle de puissance comprennent des moyens de commutation pour activer / désactiver sélectivement une ou plusieurs antennes directives atta i serve a 1.2.5
 - 4. Appareil selon la revendication 1, caractérisé en ce que le dispositif de détection de proximité comprend un détecteur de température. 1.1.1.6.4.
 - 5. Appareil selon la revendication 1, caractérisé en ce que le dispositif de détection de proximité comprend un détecteur d'humidité.

10

25

30

35.

6. Equipement radio mobile susceptible de communiquer avec au moins une station radio de base d'une système, de télécommunications: radioélectriques, ledit équipement comportant: a signalizera any engine in any side 5 to

7

des moyens d'émission / réception de signaux radioélectriques ; couplés jà june - structure; d'antenne présentant un diagramme de rayonnement, privilégiant certaines, directions en émission et au commercia d'anne un dispositif de régulation de puissance commandé par un organe de contrôle pour modifier The second state of the second .1

caractérisé en ce qu'il comprend un dispositif, de 15. détection de proximité pour mesurer au moins un paramètre d'environnement et fournir à l'organe de contrôle une indication de proximité pour commany der le dispositif de régulation de puissance.

the second s Station radio de base d'un système de télécommu-7. nications radioélectriques susceptible de communiquer avec au moins un terminal radio mobile, ladite station comportant : \$

and generatives a strategies des moyens d'émission / réception de signaux radioélectriques couplés à une structure d'antenne présentant, un diagramme de rayonnement, privilégiant, certaines, directions en émission et

un dispositif de régulation de puissance commandé par un organe de contrôle pour modifier ledit diagramme de rayonnement

go democra in the above end of the caractérisée en ce qu'elle comprend un dispositif de détection de proximité pour mesurer au moins un paramètre d'environnement et fournir à l'organe: de contrôle une indication de proximité pour commander le dispositif de régulation de puissance.

and rate 617 Procédé de contrôle de puissance pour contrôler la 8. puissance rayonnée dans une direction donnée par une pluralité d'antennes directives ayant des puissances d'émission respectives, caractérisé en ce qu'il comprend les étapes suivan-

d'environnement pour détecter une présence humaine à proximité de l'appareil,

une étape de comparaison à des valeurs de consigne. 1.140

ſ

7

une étape de sélection d'au moins une antenne ٠. directive pour réguler sa puissance d'émission en fonction du résultat de l'étape de comparai- 55 son, and the second
and the second and the start

and a state of an exclusion . 12 1.3.2 ing engine production of the company andre m 8.79 with the analysis with the set of the set of parameters and sections

8

notation and shear on several companies of station for a state of the end to end the end to be the state of the original of the end to be the state of the state production and a contraction of the and the contraction of the sel elo interne a l'Aganòdique clastra e del con experted models, as desperved and when see all a (1) In the set of t where the second states of the addet date is where each apprendict in the second s ing an angeneral strander of the strander of the second strands and the de clamates and de la forma y stranger vitra de la stran constances above dealers incomenters t when it is

1.001 supplier, noticely in the store where more it. the provent in a ship the fit of the states ···; « *· 10.00 ente destritat de la constante a above co stationa of a doubles were harden to no social the concernst and the other and and present of the descent of the second The plant start and the start of the THE COLD FOR THE COLD AND CONTRACT CONTRACT ed algement, and a support of the set of the set anoltanistic publics of strategy and off and off

< - 15.

* *

2

79

- 144

۴. - 54

7

A.

.

45

5.2

٠.,

(0) 231 - Ala mjure - Filtrary paratocada ela controla de sinegrofines delles one take to antistate duracelus es coués al contra d'éla tener le foure de l'auguré dout chiq is relative were from a district of the and the of scevers and association break unit second addition encode 40 (A year of A , the same to the second of 1989) (2) A state of the second s the form of the provider of $t_{\rm S}$ G en service and the service service service service service services and the service servic to a set way of galaxy of the all of hear 45. AND MALERY REAL MADE AND ADDRESS TO SHEET dentembring am analogen el la maan graff des andere A BRINGER ELECTRONIC MERCE AND A REPORT OF A RECEIPTION OF A e fromaine en la superior de la forma de la superior de superior de la superior in the metal and so have a new residence of the 化合物性合物 医动脉 化合物性化合物性分泌性的 some the state of the proved of the state of the state

and had been been an ere the and the (a) A state of a subsect of a structure state of subsection of the structure state of the structure state of the structure and the state of the second states and the second practic policity Brange and partial labor in the action of the second success the test of provide and patient memory in a c

5

1/EPOU 977 502341

۰Ĵ.



EROS 9772 3045A1



j 3



1.4.50 9797 08 644 A 1

ð))

`7 \

. 3 1

Office européen des brevets

Numero de la demande EP 99 20 2385

DO	CUMENTS CONSIDER	ES COMME PERTINEN	TS	
Catégorie	Citation du document avec des parties pert	indication en cas de besoin.	Revendicat	CLASSEMENT DE LA
X	WO 98 29968 A (AT 8 9 juillet 1998 (199 * page 2, ligne 24 * page 8, ligne 30 * page 10, ligne 7 * page 15, ligne 3	T CORP) 	*	H0101/24 H04B1/38 H0103/24 H0103/28
x	US 5 541 609 A (STL 30 juillet 1996 (19 * colonne 4, ligne	JTZMAN WARREN L ET A 996-07-30) 21 - Higne 44; figur	L) 1-3,6- e 5	8
Y	* colonne 2, ligne	44 - ligne 52 *	1,4,5	
Y	US 5 729 238 A (WAL 17 mars 1998 (1998- * abrégé *	TON JR WILLIAM B) 03-17)	1,4,5	
Y	US 5 229 975 A (TRL 20 juillet 1993 (19 * abrégé *	JESDELL DAVE ET AL) 93-07-20)	1,4	
D,A	EP 0 752 735 A (DEU 8 janvier 1997 (199 * abrégé *	TSCHE TELEKOM MOBIL)	1-8	HO1Q HO4B
A	WO 95 03549 A, (QUAL 2 février 1995 (199 * page 1, ligne 25	COMM_INC) 95-02-02) - page 2. ligne 9 *-	1-8	
A	DE 44 10 174 A (SEL 28 septembre 1995 (* abrégé *	ALCATEL AG) 1995-09-28)	1-8	
A	US 5 029 101 A (FER 2 juillet 1991 (199 * abrégé *	NANDES ROOSEVELT A)	1,4,5	
	l 	l .		
Le pré	sent rapport a été établi pour to	utes les revendications		S Constant
U	ieu de la recherche	Date d'achèvement de la recherche		Examinateur
	LA HAYE	16 septembre	1999 W	attiaux, V
X : partie Y : partie autre A : arrie O : divul P : docu	ATEGORIE DES DOCUMENTS CITE culièrement pertinent à lui seul culièrement pertinent en combinaisor document de la méme catégorie re-plan technologique gation non-écrile ment intercalaire	S T : théorie ou E : document date, da dé n avec un D : cité dans I t: cité pour d & : membre d	principe à la base d de brevet antérieur. pôt ou après cette d a demande 'autres raisons e la même famille, d	le l'invention mais publié à la late locument correspondant

. 9

1AED 0 977 304A1

7

ſ

٩,

1

8

Numéro de la demande · й.-SPUB BHC Office européen des brevets qui ensinal central da cu d a warrun bußlen abs eit · Anderstein · • •..; DOCUMENTS CONSIDERES COMME PERTINENTS en tre para la Citation du document avec indication, en cas de besoin, Revendication Catégorie CLASSEMENT DE LA des parties pertinentes concernee DEMANDE EP 0 838 791 A (HUBBELL INC) 29 avril 1998 (1998-04-29) А 1,4 sir. 4.3.2-4. ¹. - 4 * abrégé * ----- 114 \mathcal{A} 10 ÷.,) A. 1 1 ÷., 0 35 - ? 5.5^{+1} \odot ι. • - • • - $\frac{1}{2}$ -... 1.81.581.5 20 . 8791 -· · · · 7187195 A 4 4015318 \mathbf{P} 1 . 1954 -1. . 124-1405 085027 - 2 10 - (si 97 . . · · , . · N NOSAGE 68 2011 -A BULLAR 55 ¢.1 . . . -. $\mathcal{D}^{(n,n)}A$ · 7 • 90' 100.02 1 Acres - 1. (b. - - -- - -Vén, 1 - 1 195202-4 V71 3 o grain ł 301-10 . · 1 3571.5 14 9 52 133 1.221 0 6E DOMAINES TECHNIQUES RECHERCHES dA A PELIKA NG BALA NG BATAN A RED PELI A RED PELI 11 1 c 14 16 m . 101 3 į 29 A . . 1. 22 ķ. . in in in 091117137 0 697017797 1 0711437 A 31.91 19 30 ÷ 5695 Store H 11 3261 80-10 2111320 3 23 A SIGNIQ T NESHOUS A DOCTOL Sec. 1. 415 - 64 11 8 91-i Яa 3 101 (--{.-) 111 ; re 1 2110024 ч. del-4 20081 5-51 25 44.5 1.1 2 (a, b)< 1.07÷ . . - - 121-1 , B. PR. J ... 1000 fra - j, ·. : : Le présent rapport a été établi pour toutes les revendications . Lieu de la recherche Date d'achèvement de la recherche EPO FORM 1503 03.82 (P04C02) LA HAYE 16 septembre 1999 Wattiaux, V T : théorie ou principe à la base de l'invention E : document de brevet anterieur, mais publié à la dele de dépôt ou après cette date D : cité dans la demande L : cité pour d'autres raisons CATEGORIE DES DOCUMENTS CITES X : particulièrement pertinent à lui seul Y : particulièrement pertinent en combinalson avec un autre document de la mème catégorie <u>A</u> : artière-plan technologique A O D divulgation non-ecrite document intercalaire & : membre de la même famille, document correspondant

10 .

.

, .

ţ

ł i

AH#0 9% 0047A1

EP 99 20 2385

. . . '

And the second second

ANNEXE AU RAPPORT DE RECHERCHE EUROPEENNE RELATIF À LA DEMANDE DE BREVET EUROPEEN NO. 34 (- 1

								_
 8	Doc au ra	cument brevet ci pport de recher	ité che	Date de publication	:- M tam	embre(s) de la ille de brevet(s)	Date de publication	
	WO	9829968	A	09-07-1998	AUCU	N		
	US	5541609	Α	30-07-1996	WO	9627915 A	12-09-1996	
	บร	5729238	Α	17-03-1998	US	5798735 A	25-08-1998	
					AU	7162296 A	09-04-1997	
			:		CA	2231844 A	27-03-1997	
					CN	1201555 A	09-12-1998	
					EP	0852073 A	08-07-1998	
			•		NO	981227 A	06-05-1998	
			r		. WO	9711505 A	27-03-1997	
	US	5229975	Â	20-07-1993	AUCU	N	1.	
	EP	0752735	; A	08-01-1997	DE	19524288 C	06-03-1997	
	u0	0503540	: A	02-02-1995	AT	161970 T	15-01-1998	
500	NO.	5303345	1	02 02 1995	ALL	679256 B	26-06-1997	
		1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 - 1997 -			ALI	7475094 A	20-02-1995	
-	• •				BR	9407102 A	27-08-1996	
			,			1127552 A	24-07-1996	
						60407707 D	12-02-1998	
			÷.	2 4 S. 2		60407707 T	06-08-1998	
					UE	0711417 4	15-05-1006	
					EP	0/1141/ A	01-02-1009	
					ES	2111320	01-05-1998	
					11	960212 A	16-01-1996	
					GR	3026294	30-06-1998	
					нк	1003600 A	30-10-1998	
					JP	9500728 T	21-01-1997	
					SG	49309 A	18-05-1998	
	_				SI	711417 T	30-06-1998	
	DE	4410174	, A	28-09-1995	AUCU	N 	i	
	US	5029101	¹ A	02-07-1991	US	4894785 A	16-01-1990	
	EP	0838791	A	29-04-1998	AUCU	N		
	_,		2			ing an	7 - 3F	
		- 0.5		n i fe men	an a		weather a start of a	
			. •	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			31, 6.3	
· .		· · · ·						1
			(a,b,d) = (a,b)	1974 - 1 A 1		 All spaces the stress 	eden en transmissión de la companya	
			الي في الفريسية. مريسة من الإي			يحارب والمراجع	ا محرب ما مرج	
						Low Logic Berry	and the second	1.10
				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·			n sa w	f
		print une s	1.11	 A second sec second second sec			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	

Pour tout renseignement concernant cette annexe : voir Journal Officiel de l'Office européen des brevets, No.12/82

.19

EPO FORM P0460

.

: 11



....

To Stable (CP 4900000) EDDEL (QC 4) (C - 4) (RC 980-980-50-6600000)

condition = conditita condition = condition = condition = condition = con PER LOCCETATE (PCT) 59662PSE 45.55 matical as where a strandard of the (R. 11,945-300) gar in 52412 -containic tail (65) ÷.4 • •

21 [2] Analyz P. Soul 12, Col. 94, 528 and 137 (1971) 1977 (1971) 440 (1971) 447 (1971) end all (19)⁴ against contract of the contract Carrie Aready a and 19 10 Styr 16 14

5 . 4. 2 acta chag s à in a bur Barra $\sim dec$ Presidente de la contra contra conserva con ۰. 1. 19. 1881 1. 1 ود المعر A) Proposition of the state of * 4 .) . . .(

(i) Symmetry and the end of the Westman Control of the second Control (Westman).

This Page Blank (uspto)



د بین . این از این از میرید این موقع با میشود بید فران گروه و بیده میتود (این میتود) این میتود این که این این ا این و دو میل میلو وی میتواند این این و دو میتواند میتوند و میتواند و میتواند این میتواند. این میتواند این این م میتواند و میتواند این میتواند این و بیدومیتون و میتواند و میتواند و میتواند و میتواند این میتواند این میتواند ا میتواند و میتواند و میتواند این این و میتواند و میتواند و میتواند و میتواند و میتواند و میتواند. : . . . and the state of the state of the the table of approximation ي الري ومحمد و Charles in the second (1, 2, 2, 3)a man near order your A an Charles · · · · ·

This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning Operations and is not part of the Official Record

BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

BLACK BORDERS

☐ IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES

□ FADED TEXT OR DRAWING

□ BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING

SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES

COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS

GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS

LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT

REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY

OTHER: ____

IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.

As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox.

THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)

(19)	Europäisches Patentamt European Patent Office Office européen des brevets	(11) EP 0 843 421 A3
(12)	EUROPEAN PAT	ENT APPLICATION
(88)	Date of publication A3: 10.05.2000 Bulletin 2000/19	(51) Int CI.7: H04B 7/005 , H04Q 7/32
(43)	Date of publication A2: 20.05.1998 Bulletin 1998/21	
(21)	Application number: 97660122.9	
(22)	Date of filing: 12.11.1997	
(22) (84)	Date of filing: 12.11.1997 Designated Contracting States: AT BE CH DE DK ES FI FR GB GR IE IT LI LU MG NL PT SE Designated Extension States: AL LT LV MK RO SI	 (72) Inventors: Pirhonen, Riku 00200 Helsinki (FI) Ojanperä, Tero 00200 Helsinki (FI)
(22) (84)	Date of filing: 12.11.1997 Designated Contracting States: AT BE CH DE DK ES FI FR GB GR IE IT LI LU MG NL PT SE Designated Extension States: AL LT LV MK RO SI Priority: 13.11.1996 FI 964548	 (72) Inventors: Pirhonen, Riku 00200 Helsinki (FI) Ojanperä, Tero 00200 Helsinki (FI) (74) Representative: Levlin, Jan Markus Bergaren Ov Ab

(57) The aim of the invention is to restrict the maximum transmitted power used by a mobile communication means. In most countries there are regulations in force which impose certain maximum limits on the power of electromagnetic radiation directed towards humans. These limits vary from country to country and will most probably be tightened in the future. In the system according to the invention, the upper limit of transmitted

EP 0 843 421 A3

power is varied according to the mode of usage of the mobile communication means. A mobile communication means according to such a system meets the requirements made on a device operating close to the user's head, but the same mobile communication means may still be used in applications demanding greater transmitted power in a situation where the power limits placed on the radio set are less strict.



Fig. 3

Best Available Copy

Printed by Jouve, 75001 PARIS (FR)

54 EP1008430423 A3

10

J

إل	Office	EUROPEAN S		Г 1	- EP 97 66 01	.22
	DOCUMENTS C	ONSIDERED TO BI	ERELEVANT	1274	1 H 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
Category	Citation of docum of rele	nent with indication, where a want passages	ppropriate,	Relevant to claim		iE
Α -	WO 93 01659 A 21 January 19 * page 35, 1i figure 14 * * page 38, 1i	(MOTÓROLA INC) 93 (1993-01-21) ne 26 - page 37, ne 1, - line 26 *	11111111111111111111111111111111111111	t , 9	H04B7/005 H04Q7/32	
A.	WO 96 34461 A 31 October 19 * page 3, lin * page 4, lin	(ERICSSON TELEF 96 (1996-10-31) e 33 - page 4, 1 e 30 - page 5, 1	DN ABLM) ine 7 * ine 6 *	.9	,	
	5 July 1995 (column 2,]	A (<u>N1</u> PPON ELECTR 199507-05) ine 45 - column 4	1C CO) 4, line 29 *	, 9		3
		21日) 1月11日 - 1月1日 1月11日 - 1月11日 1月11日 - 1月11日 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月111日 - 1月111日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月11日 - 1月111日 - 1月111日 - 1月111日 - 1月111日 - 1月111日 - 1月111日 - 1月111日 - 1月111日 - 1月111 - 1月111日 - 1月111日 - 1月1111 - 1月1111 - 1月11111 - 1月1111 - 1月1111 - 1月1111 - 1月11111 - 1月11111 - 1月11111 - 1月11111 - 1月11111 - 1月11111 - 1月11111 - 1月111111 - 1月11111 - 1月11111 - 1月111111 - 1月111111 - 1月111111 - 1月111111 - 1月111111 - 1月111111 - 1月1111111 - 1月11111111 - 1月1111111111			TECHNICAL FIELDS	
- 8 1- 		128852 - 20 1970 - 20 201820 - 12 201820 - 14 2008 - 1 - 20	1990 - 22 - 27 1		HO4B HO4M	5) · ·
i - L- i - 94)- i - 94)- i - 941- i - 1-1-	30 F	.14 26699 14 22045 14 22045 15 56655	3-01-10-10			•
						•
	The present search re	port has been drawn up for	all claims		· · · ·	
	Place of search	Date of c	ompletion of the search	Dia	Examiner	
CA X : parti Y : parti	TEGORY OF CITED DOC outarty relevant if taken ato outarty relevant if combine	CUMENTS	T : theory or principle un E : earlier patent docum after the filing date D : document eited in the	derlying the im ent, but publish	ilsi, M rention ed on, or	;.

2

EPN0:843(421' A3

ANNEX TO THE EUROPEAN SEARCH REPORT ON EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION NO. THE REPORT OF MUSICIPALITY

. •

2 B

ł

÷ 1

-1

EP 97 66 0122

۰<u>۱</u>, Ŋ

ý

and a start ۰.

This annex lists the patent family members relating to the patent documents cited in the above-mentioned European search report. The members are as contained in the European Patent Office EDP file on The European Patent Office is in no way liable for these particulars which are merely given for the purpose of information. 22-03-2000

Pal cited	tent document in search report	, .	Publication date	Pa	atent family nember(s)	07: Ju	Publication date
WO . S	9301659	A	21-01-1993	CUS:11 US DE DE DE GB-60 GB-70 GB 70 GB 70 GB 70 GB 70 HK HK JP KR KR KR MX	5898933 5815820 4244967 4244968 4292273 4292273 2683409 2264211 2293726 2293727 1000818 1000819 1000981 1258426 7505263 127759 129713 9204048	A 2 20 A 2 20 C C 2 2 2 20 A 2 20 A 2 20 A 4 A B A 4 B T B B B A	27-04-1999 29-09-1998 05-08-1999 29-07-1999 12-08-1999 07-10-1993 18-08-1993 03-04-1996 03-04-1996 03-04-1998 15-05-1998 26-02-1998 26-02-1996 08-06-1995 01-04-1998 14-04-1998
WO	9634461	A	31-10-1996	US AU AU EP JP	5732335 707015 5521396 0823151 11504187	A B A A T	24-03-1998 01'-07-1999 18-11-1996 11-02-1998 06-04-1999
EP	0661824	A	05-07-1995	JP JP FI US	2689880 7203523 946097 5668867	B A A A	10-12-1997 04-08-1995 29-06-1995 16-09-1997
- - -		-	£2,54, €		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		t i i i i i i i i i i i i i i
		an an An Albana An Albana	2000 2010		in i		Anna an Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna Anna A

© For more details about this annex : see Official Journal of the European Patent Office, No. 12/82

			· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
·意志学会教育社会 相互		(1 .)	the second se
	÷	13月15日 13月16 日本)(e and the second se
	0 7 5	t to mightly	an a

en en en la subsection de la companya de la company

1 ...

. 12

-- --. . . gen general terrar anglar se MAD na karangan ang · • • • an;' - . • signal compo state of the 10 an 14 1 en linger og det som en so Som en ,

andth i fa fals gan i stree

na kupa magy This Page Blank (usp*

we are the theory of the state
(a) and the head of a set of the set of t $\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{1}{2}$

an the second second nde underste steldenstalt in a first a reserve of the **p**ole non-sector + 132* (1) A set of the se

Hard Conception All Conceptions and design of the

.....

I The LATE BY ARE IN

ŧ

÷

: entre Barrier genocht nature reihenen 1.2 $\cap F$.

(19)	Europäisches Patentamt European Patent Office Office européen des brevets	(11) EP 0 843 421 A
(12)	EUROPEAN PAT	ENT APPLICATION
(43)	Date of publication: 20.05.1998 Bulletin 1998/21	(51) Int Cl. ⁶ : H04B 7/005 , H04Q 7/32
(21)	Application number: 97660122.9	
(22)	Date of filing: 12.11.1997	
` '		
(84)	Designated Contracting States: AT BE CH DE DK ES FI FR GB GR IE IT LI LU MC NL PT SE Designated Extension States: AL LT LV MK RO SI	 (72) Inventors: Pirhonen, Riku 00200 Helsinki (Fl) Ojanperä, Tero 00200 Helsinki (Fl)
(30)	Designated Contracting States: AT BE CH DE DK ES FI FR GB GR IE IT LI LU MC NL PT SE Designated Extension States: AL LT LV MK RO SI Priority: 13.11.1996 FI 964548	 (72) Inventors: Pirhonen, Riku 00200 Helsinki (Fl) Ojanperä, Tero 00200 Helsinki (Fl) (74) Representative: Levlin, Jan Markus Bergaren Ov Ab

(57) The aim of the invention is to restrict the maximum transmitted power used by a mobile communication means. In most countries there are regulations in force which impose certain maximum limits on the power of electromagnetic radiation directed towards humans. These limits vary from country to country and will most probably be tightened in the future. In the system according to the invention, the upper limit of transmitted

£,

្រា

5

Ş.

21

EP 0 843 421 A2

power is varied according to the mode of usage of the mobile communication means. A mobile communication means according to such a system meets the requirements made on a device operating close to the user's head, but the same mobile communication means may still be used in applications demanding greater transmitted power in a situation where the power limits placed on the radio set are less strict. æ

÷ .

۰, 1

ć



Fig. 3

Printed by Jouve, 75001 PARIS (FR)

Description <: 1:6-** on one collection records 1. 10 (E. 19) FIELD OF THE INVENTION . the desidence of the NAMES AND DESCRIPTION OF THE SECOND transmitted power-used, by, a mobile communication means, due noncreases of 6 and 4, proceedings n bender athe in securitie emilient of y repeaters an energiet. Bit - BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

1

10 M 11 1 1 1 1. 1. 50 In most countries there are regulations in force which, place, certain maximum limits on the power of electromagnetic radiation directed towards humans. These limits vary from country to country and will most probably be tightened in the future.

On the other hand, as the transmission speed in mobile communication means systems increases, the amount of energy radiated by mobile communication means also increases. For example, in networks based upon TDMA technology, data transmission speeds may ... 20 in principle be increased by using several successive time slots in the same TDMA frame, in which case the mean transmitted power increases. The use of several successive time slots in the same frame is possible in the Universal Mobile Telecommunication System (UMTS) under development and in new Global System , for Mobile communications (GSM) standards which are o under development. In CMDA systems the transmitted power has to be raised in line with the data transmission , speed if one wishes to keep the bit error rate constant. In both basic techniques the amount of energy radiated by the antenna increases as the data transmission speed increases, in which case the permitted limits may pat some stage be exceeded and another large large

and directed towards the user is typically measured on the basis of the least favourable operating situation, in the case of a cordless telephone with the entenna almost pressed against the user's head life radio set may power, for example for voice transmission and for highspeed data transfer, all functions of the radio set have to adjust to the limits which follow from the least favourable operating situation.

For example, in the current-GSM system, the max- ... 45 imum power of a mobile communication means which is used during one time slot is 2 W, which means that the mean transmitted power is approximately:250 mW. According to new GSM standards which are being developed, a mobile communication means may use for the high-speed data transfer as many as all eight-time slots in one frame, in which case the mean transmitted power is 2 W. This causes problems if the 250 mW which is satisfactory for voice calls has been set as the upper limit of radio power directed towards the user's head. In this situation the mobile communication means may not use maximum power levels, but must use instantaneous transmitted power lower than in a voice call, so that the

. limit of mean transmitted power is not exceeded. This again causes audibility problems, since the base stations in the mobile communication means network are designed to cope with the needs of a voice link.

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

and the state of the second state of the second The aim of this invention is to create a system which

adjusts the power level used by a mobile communication 10 means to the mode of usage of the mobile communica13

٢.,

2

17

- tion means. A further aim of the invention is to create a system with the aid of which a mobile communication means may utilize the maximum permitted transmitted power in any given situation. In addition, an aim of the 15, invention is to create a system with the aid of which the user may, if he so desires, limit the maximum values of electromagnetic radiation directed towards his body.
 - These aims are achieved by incorporating in the mobile communication means a device for identification of the mode of usage, and by arranging for the transmitted power of the mobile communication means to be lim-. ited according to the mode of usage and the type of current connection or connections.

Characteristic of the system according to the inven-25 tion is what is described in the characteristic part of the , independent claims. Dependent claims describe further advantageous embodiments of the invention. The in-- vention is further directed to a mobile communication means; which is characterized by that which is de-301 scribed in the characterizing part of the corresponding independent claim in a state of the second state process in the system according to the invention, the upper g limit of transmitted power used by the mobile communi-, cation means is varied according to the mode of usage. The radiation power caused by a particular radio set 35. A mobile communication means according to such a

;; system; meets: the more stringent requirements: placed in upon sets which are to be used next to the user's head, but the same mobile communication means may still be employed for applications demanding greater transmit-, be used in many ways demanding differing transmitted at 40 to ted power in a situation where the power limits imposed te: on the radio set are less strict.

> . When a mobile communication means is used in a - situation typical of a telephone; the mean power transmitted by the mobile communication means is limited to the maximum value for a telephone permitted by regulations and test procedures. When a mobile communication means is used for example as a data transfer device in conjunction with a portable computer, the maximum permissible transmitted power may be increased 50 ... in accordance with the requirements of the data transfer

rate employed. · . SHORT DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS

the strander of the constraint of the 55 The invention will now be described in greater detail with reference to favourable embodiments, presented by way of example, and to the attached drawings, where the attraction of the second second second second

113

Figure 1

represents one possible mechanism for identification of the mode of usage of a mobile communication means, as used in the system according to the invention,

3

٦

2

: 1

represents a second possible mechanism Figure 2 for identification of the mode of usage of a mobile communication means, as used in the system according to the invention, and ะควศ เม่. ชุระ β ≟ะ อัน พลุษศร⊺ศศตราว ŝ

Figure 3 - illustrates an advantageous embodiment of used the invention: I will a bit the set we egga , else constana constante a constana cambién In the drawings, the same reference numbers and symbols are used for parts which correspond to each other, the second a line of a later of b

and a him redecided profiled as are not in DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED INVENTION: CONTRACTOR AND A DESCRIPTION

 Control processing and a control of the control In the system according to the invention, the transmitted power of a mobile communication means is limited according to its operating situation. When the mobile communication means is used as a cordless telephone next to the user's head, the system restricts the transmitted power of the mobile communication means to the limits demanded by this situation. When the user connects the mobile communication means to a portable microcomputer, for the purpose of data transfer for example, the system permits the use of transmitted " power greater than in the preceding situation; in which case the mobile communication means may use transmission speeds higher than the transmission speed required for a talking connection, without impairment of the quality of the link: A mobile communication means" equipped with such a system is capable of adhering to differing transmitted power-limits according to different operating situations, with the possibility however of using the high transmitted power required by high transmission speeds when it is both necessary and possible. (1): 40

In the system according to this invention, several different methods may be employed for identification of the mode of usage of the mobile communication means, depending upon the design of the mobile communication/means to which the invention is applied at 4

.Some mobile communication means are openable, so that; when the mobile communication means is closed, the communication means acts as a cordless telephone, and when it is open the communication multi-purpose communication means, which may be used for data transfer in many ways employing known technology. An example of this which may be mentioned is the GSM multi-purpose communication means, as presented, for example, on pages 57-58 of issue 31, " 1996, of Mobile Communications International. Figure 1 contains a particular solution according to the invention as applied to such a mobile communication means.

On different sides of a hinge 4 for connection of two openable parts 2, 3 of a mobile communication means are situated a switch 12 in a recess and a pin 10. When the mobile communication means is closed for normal 5 Otelephone operation, the pin 10 presses against the

"switch 12. When the user opens the mobile communication means, the pin 10 releases the switch 12, so that the system according to the invention receives information concerning a change of mode of usage of the mobile 10 communication means.

910 I The Structure in Figure 1 is merely an example of a bopossible solution. Monitoring of the cover position may, in the system according to the invention, be realized in immany other ways familiar to men skilled in the art. 15 Mobile communication means are frequently used

1 connected to a portable computer. Figure 2 shows one particular method of detection of the mode in such a configuration: In Figure 2) a portable computer 20 is connected by means of a connection cable 18 to a mobile 20 communication means 1. At the interface 16 of the mobile communication means 1 there is a pin 10, which is pressed down by the plug 14 of the connection cable 18 when the user inserts the plug 14 into the mobile communication means: The pin 10 may for example press against a mechanical switch so that the system is noti-25 ified of the change of mode. Connected to a portable computer, the mobile communication means is usually employed purely for data transfer, in which case the computer acts as a terminal, for example, with which the 30 Juser links up to the computing system at his place of work. In such a situation, high transmission speeds are · also an advantage / in such an application a system/acproording to the invention permits the use of high transmitted power necessitated by the data transfer rates 3516 when the plug 14 is inserted into the connection socket *16: When the connection cable 18 is not connected to withe mobile communication means 1, the system accordwing to the invention only permits the use of transmitted Y*power/defreqUired Tore# voice call the astron being

so mildentification of the mode of usage may also be ebased upon the use of a position switch or any other conventional position sensing device, in which case the -system permits the use of high transmitted power when the mobile communication means is in the horizontal 45 plane or sufficiently close to a horizontal position, for example when it is purced on a table. The position switch It is to best advantage designed to recognize in particular when that side of the mobile communication means which is greatest in surface area is horizontal. With such means acts, for example, as a portable computer and 50; an arrangement it is possible to avoid incorrect mode ridentification, for example in a situation where the user ' is speaking into the mobile communication means at the è same time as leaning backwards in an armchair.

recarding the mobile communication means there may be 550 aspecial pull-out alphanumeric keyboard for the entry to of text. In such a mobile communication means identification of the mode may be based upon the position of the keyboard: the system interprets the set as being in

з

telephone use when the keyboard is retracted within the set, and in data transfer use when the keyboard is pulled douter fast of the strength of the second strength of the

5

an a system according to this invention, restriction of the mean transmitted power being used may be effected in a number of different ways. In time division mobile communication means systems, the mean transmitted power may be reduced by decreasing the number of time slots transmitted in one frame, in which case the data transmission speed drops. The mean transmitted power may also be reduced by decreasing the instantaneous power used during one time slot, in which case the number of time slots to be transmitted may be kept constant. Use the read to the store set

even Limitation of the transmitted power may to best ad-, vantage be effected according to the operating situation: For example, if the mobile communication means is transmitting a file from its memory at a high data transfer rate using several time slots precisely when the user switches the telephone to a mode in which the set is used principally as a telephone, the method for limitation of transmitted power which is employed may be chosen on the basis of the type of data transmission connection. If the transmission connection used permits a change in the transmission speed, the system reduces the - number of time slots used. If the transmission connection does not permit a change in the transmission speed. the number of time slots used must be kept constant, in which case the transmitted power used during one time slot must be reduced, in conditions of good audibility this 30 30 $_{
m slot} ^{10}$ one frame, 100 is not a problem, but reduction of transmitted power at in the margins of the area covered by the base station may cause an increase in bit error probability or intehruption of the connection. The efforts of a recompletion Power transmitted in CDMA systems may be re-0.35

" duced either by lowering the data transmission speed. in which case the quantity of energy transmitted by the mobile communication means (alls) loo by keeping the data transmission speed the same but reducing the transmitted power, for example by decreasing the transmitter's output stage amplification, in which case the bit error rate of the connection increases. The choice of the best procedure thus depends upon the quality of the connection in the CDMA'system, upon the data transconnection.

 Owing to the various effects of the different ways of limiting transmitted power as described above, the user may to his advantage determine in advance the type of power limiting method which the mobile communication means should use in the first place. The user may, for example, decide that the mobile communication means should in the first place reduce the number of time slots used, in which case the connection will be maintained more securely, and that the power used during one time slot should be reduced only when some other type of function is not possible. 12101 ii 1

In the system according to this invention, the max-

in imum power limit observed by the system when the mobile communication means is used as a telephone may be set on manufacture of the mobile communication means on the basis of test measurements carried out 5, on samples. Owing to changes in the limits set by the

6

authorities and to the differing regulations in different countries, it is an advantage if the said power limit can be changed at a later stage either by the retailer or by the user of the mobile communication means.

10 The system according to the invention may furthermore restrict the modes of usage of the mobile commu-... nication means when the mobile communication means uses a high transmitted power. The system may, for example, totally prevent use of the mobile communication

15 , means as a telephone, or permit only calls made with the aid of the hands-free function. With such an arrangement it is possible to affect the user in such a way that he does not use the mobile communication means in a situation in which the mobile communication means ex-20 ceeds the limits according to issued regulations.

The system according to the invention may thus restrict the function of the mobile communication means win addition to limiting of the transmitted power, by restricting the mode of usage. The system may then react 25 to a change in mode when a high, data transmission speed and a high transmitted power are in use, for ex-

i. ample in the following three ways: services and the manufacture of the 1.

*-i by reducing the number of time slots used during subscience and an include a

at - ter if this is not possible on account of the transmission at an mode used, by reducing the power used during one time slot, or serve the server server state

-> by preventing the making of a normal call, if a de-

the ocrease in the transmitted power used in data transencode of threatens to interrupt the transmission connection. 1 Block - Consider

e datera tatu prigan. Provinsi isi aterny Fig. 3 shows a block diagram of a digital mobile 40 communication means according to an advantageous embodiment of the invention. The mobile communica- tion means comprises a microphone 301, keyboard 307, display/306, earpiece 314, antenna duplexer or switch 308, antenna 309 and a control unit 305, which all are mission speed and upon the quality of the transmission 45 typical components of conventional mobile communication means. Further, the mobile communication means contains typical transmission and receiver blocks 311, ... 304. Transmission block 311 comprises functionality necessary for speech and channel coding, encryption, and modulation, and the necessary RF circuitry for amplification of the signal for transmission. Receiver block 304 comprises the necessary amplifier circuits and functionality necessary for demodulating and decryption of the signal, and removing channel and speech coding. 55 The signal produced by the microphone 301 is amplified in the amplifier stage 302 and converted to digital form

1;

in the A/D converter 304, whereafter the the signal is taken to the transmitter block 304. The transmitter block encodes the digital signal and produces the modulated and amplified kF-signal, whereafter the RF signal is taken to the antenna 309 via the duplexer or switch 308. The receiver block 311 demodulates the received signal and removes the encryption and channel coding. The resulting speech signal is converted to analog form in the D/A converter 312, the output signal of which is amplified in the amplifier stage 313, whereafter the amplified signal is taken to the earpiece 314. The control unit 305 controls the functions of the mobile communication means, reads the commands given by the user via the keypad 307 and displays messages to the user via the display 307: Further, the control unit communicates with external devices via the connection socket 16 and monitors the state of the switch inside the communication 15

socket 16 as well as other switches 12 indicating the mode of usage of the communication means. The control unit may also monitor the output signal of a position sensing device 11. The control unit then controls the transmitting power of the communication means and/or allows and/or restricts the mode of usage of the communication means in the ways described previously. When performing such control, the control unit may take also into account the types of the connections active at that time. For example, if one of the connections is for communication of speech and the mobile communication means is not in a hands-free mode, the control unit may limit the transmitting power. As a further example, if the mobile communication means is in a hands-free mode, the control unit may allow any necessary transmission mode and power to be used, since the user will most likely not have the mobile communication means close to his/her body in such a situation

The present invention is not limited to the embodiment of Figh3, which is presented as an example only 35-For example, the invention can as well be applied to an analog communication means. 1 if

With the aid of the system according to the invention the mobile communication means user may limit the A mobile communication means utilizing the system according to the invention may be employed both as a cordless telephone and as a high-speed data transfer device and in both operating situations it may use the maximum mean transmitted power permitted in the op-30 45 connected to said connector.a erating situation in question. The dist Theorem

The invention has been explained above with reference to certain favourable applications thereof, but it is clear that the invention may be varied in many different ways within the framework of the innovative concept de-fined in the attached Patent Claims. A second state

. . . . patha particulation of asymptotic contraction is for a sub-street action as the Claims - Kin Lausar - Raomen operandes en . Gr. 19 March 1991 . Cast White problem story in the 1. A system for limiting the transmitted power of a mo-

٩

bile communication means capable of having at least one connection having a connection type,

provide a contrational pression. where the state - at least one means for producing an indication notion the mode of usage of the mobile communi-5 Hored of ication means, decry a spinal in percent of the -control unit for controlling the functions of the -interaction means and for control-

ing the transmitting power of the mobile comthe section means as a response to said means 10 Pathetics for identification and the connection type of the - is the second least one connection. a. No. 195 As do nome to a 10.00 6

2 A system according to claim 1, characterized in that it is arranged to limit the instantaneous transsemitted power as a response to said means for iden-

tification and the connection type of the at least one connection, use a state of a stat il .1 6 .1

3. A system according to claim 1, characterized in 20 that it is arranged to limit the data transmission speed used by the mobile communication means a state a response to said means for identification and the connection type of the at least one connection. greense is a service of same of consistence of the method. 25 2 4, 2: A system-according to claim 1, characterized in

7

đ,

- southat it is arranged to limit the number of time slots used for transmission in one frame of the time diviin the sion system as a response to said means for iden-: detification and the connection type of the at least one 30 arthy deconnection, let was the second subscription of the

to tevic interference to the month of the second se /: 5:::: A system according to claim 1, characterized in Buy that it is arranged to prevent high-speed data transmission in a situation where the mobile communiad cation means would exceed the permitted power Insight the second terms of and yell astairesponse to said means for identification and or a perthe connection dyperof the at least one connection. ed) prioriter todiomes or is basic mount energy and amount of radiation directed towards his body. et (e.g. 3): 40 er6. Alsystem according: to claim 1, echaracter/zed in to set that it comprises a connector for connecting an exusi to sternal cables and in which system at least one of with the said at least one means for producing an indication sings, is a switch indicating whether or not there is a cable

: 74: A system according to claim 1, characterized in othat it comprises a first part; a second part, and at 50 ... to said second part, and in which system at least the two one of said at least one means for producing an indication is a means for producing an indication of the relative position of said first and second parts of the mobile communication means.

55 nu en bet al l'articul a cathair 8...: A system according to claim 1, characterized in that at least one of said at least one means for producing an indication is a position sensing device.

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

5Q

į

55

6

142

r,

 \cap

9. A mobile communication means capable of having at least one connection having a connection type, characterized in that it comprises

9

- at least one means for producing an indication of the mode of usage of the mobile communication means,
- a control unit for controlling the functions of the mobile communication means and for controlling the transmitting power of the mobile communication means as a response to said means for identification and the connection type of the at least one connection.

٠.

2:

AEP10843427 A2

٢

2

3.

al constant of the solution of

.

۰.

...



Fig. 1

SAEP 0 843 42FA2






BP 0 843 42TA2

RAN BUCKER BUCKER BUCKER

e se l'attende autorige

این میکند. این این می این است. این میکند این ۲۰ علمیت

 $+ q + \epsilon$

No tablet has

Sale Contractor

9-1429 112219-112

dre in the space that

nt andre syn andre s Noter stationer state to the term

a April og Kraberhallen.

`.

-1

5.1

.

.

. . .

As the Astronomy

19.75-17.

4

es pue contrator nos substants

and contended that the end of p

and the second sec

et al angla e agus ta a Gittari - G Callin At a 10102

۰.

ά.

This Page Blank (uspic,

۶.,

.....

Sterner, B., et Barris, J., et al., et al., prove \$3, representation in the second distance of a second provement of the second second provement of the second second second second second second in the Second second second second second second second in the second s

(a) the state of the state o

(1) A set of the first of the set of the

÷...)

(19)	Europäisches Patentamt European Patent Office Office européen des brevets	(11) EP 0 843 421 A3
(12)	EUROPEAN PATE	
(88) [1	Date of publication A3: 10.05.2000 Bulletin 2000/19	(51) Int CI.7: H04B 7/005, H04Q 7/32
(43) D 2	Date of publication A2: 20.05.1998 Bulletin 1998/21	
(21) A	Application number: 97660122.9	· .
(21) A (22) C	Application number: 97660122.9 Date of filing: 12.11.1997	
(21) A (22) C (84) C A (84) C A C A	Application number: 97660122.9 Date of filing: 12.11.1997 Designated Contracting States: AT BE CH DE DK ES FI FR GB GR IE IT LI LU MC NL PT SE Designated Extension States: AL LT LV MK RO SI	(72) Inventors: • Pirhonen, Riku 00200 Helsinki (FI) • Ojanperä, Tero 00200 Helsinki (FI)
(21) A (22) C (84) C A (84) C A (30) F	Application number: 97660122.9 Date of filing: 12.11.1997 Designated Contracting States: AT BE CH DE DK ES FI FR GB GR IE IT LI LU MC NL PT SE Designated Extension States: AL LT LV MK RO SI Priority: 13.11.1996 FI 964548	 (72) Inventors: Pirhonen, Riku 00200 Helsinki (FI) Ojanperä, Tero 00200 Helsinki (FI) (74) Representative: Levlin, Jan Markus

(57) The aim of the invention is to restrict the maximum transmitted power used by a mobile communication means. In most countries there are regulations in force which impose certain maximum limits on the power of electromagnetic radiation directed towards humans. These limits vary from country to country and will most probably be tightened in the future. In the system according to the invention, the upper limit of transmitted

١,

ы.

- \

EP 0 843 421 A3

power is varied according to the mode of usage of the mobile communication means. A mobile communication means according to such a system meets the requirements made on a device operating close to the user's head, but the same mobile communication means may still be used in applications demanding greater transmitted power in a situation where the power limits placed on the radio set are less strict.



Fig. 3

Printed by Jouve, 75001 PARIS (FR)

C/.EP/0/843942T A3

•2

1

.

: M

!-

1

\ /

<i>)</i>))	European Patent Office	EUROPEAN SE		40 1 -	Application Numb EP 97 66 0122
[DOCUMENTS CON	ISIDERED TO BE I	RELEVANT		n station of the second se
Category	Citation of document	with indication, where app	ropriate,	Relevant	
A	WO-93 01659 A (1 21 January 1993 * page 35, line figure 14 * * page 38, line	MOTOROLA INC) (1993-01-21) 26 - page 37, 1 1 - line 26 *	າມາ 1980 ການ ine(4;10/22	,9	H0487/005 H0407/32
A	WO 96 34461 Å (1 31 October 1996 * page 3, line, * page 4, line	ERICSSON TELEFON (1996-10-31) 33 page 4, lin 30 page 5, lin	ABLM) 1 e7* e6*	,9	
A , (EP 0 661 824 A 5 July 1995 (199	(NIPPON ELECTRIC	CO) 1	,9	· .
	* column 2, jine	4 5 - column 4,	line 29 *		·
		2684 - 14 471 - 14 471 - 14			
1977 - 1979 2017 - 1979 2017 - 1979 2017 - 1979 2017 - 1979 2017 - 1979		(1778) - 20 70) - 20 1762 - 6 V 2630 - 1 2630 - 1 2630 - 1			TECHNICAL FIELDS SEARCHED (Int.Cl.6) H04B H04M
knj [1 knj [1] k1 -∂0 ⊻01 -80	56 () () () () () () () () () (9821 - 90 2011 - 90 204 - 12 3042 - 79	7001-55-25		turturururu Altifiktingti
					· · ·
	The present search report Place of search	has been drawn up for all Date of comp	claims	r l	Examiner
CA X : partic Y : partic docur A : techn O : non	THE HAGUE TEGORY OF CITED DOCUME sularly relevant it taken alone sularly relevant it combined with ment of the same category sological background written disclosure	22 Mai Ints I another	rch 2000 T: theory or principle und E: earlier patent documes after the filing data D: document cited in the L: document cited for oth 8. member of the	Dior Berlying the imm the but publish application er reasons	nisi, M rention ed on, or

AEP10'843042TA3

ANNEX TO THE EUROPEAN SEARCH REPORT ON EUROPEAN PATENT APPLICATION NO.

· . . .

;

ţ

1

١

FORM PO459

1

ł

Т ЕР 97366 0122 нало энстрика актор эт ф

This annex lists the patent family members relating to the patent documents cited in the above-mentioned European search report. The members are as contained in the European Patent Office EDP file on The European Patent Office is in no way liable for these particulars which are merely given for the purpose of information.

						<u> </u>
		 		-	Fair (* 22-03-2000
					sectors to sectors the first to be	42 03 2000
Sec. 14	5 41 fr 6 P		 and the second se	· •	SCHMA / STUDIO THOMA MARK	

â				1. 18 a. 1 1 1 10 1	**2*	
Patent document cited in search repor	t t i	Publication date	(5.1 A.F.	atent family member(s)	v 310-210 Nienes	CPublication date
WO 9301659	A	21-01-1993 : :	US DE	5898933 A 5815820 A 4244967 C	र्ड-१० मर्ड-१४ १४ ० ४१	27-04-1999 29-09-1998 05-08-1999
	а ;	، ڈر ، ڈر	DE DE FR	4244968 C 4292273 C 4292273 T 2683409 A 2264211 A	,	29-07-1999 12-08-1999 07-10-1993 07-05-1993 18-08-1993
	P.1	(6) 1: 1: 0: 1: 1	GB GB GB HK	2293726 A 2293727 A 1000818 A	,В ,В	03-04-1996 03-04-1996 01-05-1998
· · · · · · ·			HK IT JP KR KR MX	1000981 A 1258426 B 7505263 T 127759 B 129713 B 9204048 A		15-05-1998 26-02-1996 08-06-1995 01-04-1998 14-04-1998 01-03-1998
WO 9634461	A	31-10-1996	US AU AU EP JP	5732335 A 707015 B 5521396 A 0823151 A 11504187 T		24-03-1998 01-07-1999 18-11-1996 11-02-1998 06-04-1999
EP 0661824	A	05-07-1995	JP JP FI US	2689880 B 7203523 A 946097 A 5668867 A		10-12-1997 04-08-1995 29-06-1995 16-09-1997
		1				
		i				
		۔ حدید میں اور	··· · · · ·	ana a ao antsoar an ao an a'		· · ·
	- f. 	ر ه د کې ۲۰۰۶ کې ۱۹۹۵ ۲۰۰۶ کې ۲۰۰۰ کې	14 L.	i ka ka sa	7	
	n siga si Sa siga si	ura and transit an an an Araban an an an Araban an an Araban an Araban		- k - r	3,e 1,12 -	

For more details about this annex : see Official Journal of the European Patent Office, No. 12/82

This Page Blank (usptc)

ċ

4 ²

ļ

This Page is Inserted by IFW Indexing and Scanning Operations and is not part of the Official Record

BEST AVAILABLE IMAGES

Defective images within this document are accurate representations of the original documents submitted by the applicant.

Defects in the images include but are not limited to the items checked:

BLACK BORDERS

□ IMAGE CUT OFF AT TOP, BOTTOM OR SIDES

□ FADED TEXT OR DRAWING

□ BLURRED OR ILLEGIBLE TEXT OR DRAWING

SKEWED/SLANTED IMAGES

COLOR OR BLACK AND WHITE PHOTOGRAPHS

GRAY SCALE DOCUMENTS

□ LINES OR MARKS ON ORIGINAL DOCUMENT

2 REFERENCE(S) OR EXHIBIT(S) SUBMITTED ARE POOR QUALITY

OTHER:

IMAGES ARE BEST AVAILABLE COPY.

As rescanning these documents will not correct the image problems checked, please do not report these problems to the IFW Image Problem Mailbox. THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)



PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION International Bureau



24 07 - 2014	STREATA:	5. S.	
SEA SALANDAR SPRING	. TO BIRGOT .	1, 10550, 46631, 0	

3

and a second s A second
이 이 제품이 있는 것은 것이 하는 것이 있다. and the second second second second advecting to a constrained and the second sec the first of the market and the terms are presented in the second A state of the advectory and the state of the second s 4.1 and a second provide the second se $(e^{-i}) = e^{-i}$, (e^{-i}) , $(e^{-i}$ and the following the state of the second states and states and states and the second states of the second states and the second states an enter (uma se suador dearaide selections (anos comportes a particular and a construction of the end of the factor of the second second second second second second second Be also in the set of the structure of the structure of the art of the device of the set of the set of the set . . and the second second statistical provides and the second second of the second second converse contraction of the second second active cost there all most company company of en en transformer

L Albania ES Spain LS LS Lesthania SI Slovenia M Armenia FI Finland LT Lithuania SK Slovenia F Aŭstria FR France LU Luxembourg SN Senegal U Australia GA Gabon LV Latvia SZ Swaziland Z Azetrabian GB United Kingdom MC Moñaco TD Chad A Bosnia and Herzegovina GE Georgia MD Republic of Moldova TG Togo B Barbados GH Ghana MK Madagascàr TJ Tajikistan F Burkina Faso GR Grééce MK Malia TT Trinidad and Tobago G Bulgaria HU Hugary ML Malia US Ukraine R Brazil IL Israel MR Mauritania UG Uganda K Brazil IL Israel MR Mauritania		codes used to identify Sta	tes pa	ty to the PCT on the front pa	ages of	pamphlets publishing interr	national	applications under the PCT.
I Armenia FI Finland LT Lithuania SK Slovakia Austria FR France LU Luxembourg SN Senegal Austria GA Gabon LV Latvia SZ Swaziland Azerbaijan GB United Kingdom MC Monaco TD Chad Bosnia and Herzegovina GE Georgia MD Republic of Moldova TG Togo Barbados GH Ghana MG Madagascàr TJ Tajikistan Belgium GN Guinea MK The former Yugoslav TM Turkmenistan Burkina Faso GR Grečec Republic of Macedonia TT Trikdad and Tobago Bulgaria HU Hungary ML Maliawi UG Uganda Benin TE Ireland MN Mongolia UA Ukraine Bearus IS Iceland MW Malawi US United States of America Canada IT Ialy MX Metico UZ		Ibania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AustriaFranceLULuxLuxSNSenegalAustriaGAGabonLVLatviaSZSwazilandAzerbäijanGBUnited KingdomMCMoñacoHDTDChadBosnia and HerzegovinaGEGeorgiaMDRepublic of MoldovaTGTogoBurbadosGHGhanaMCMadagascárTJTajikistanBelgiumGNGuineaMKThe former YugoslavTMTurkmenistanBurkina FasoGRGrečecMKMaliTTTrinidad and TobagoBeninTEIrelandMNMongoliaUAUA intraineBeninIEIrelandMNMogoliaUAUK raineBeninIEIrelandMNMagoslaUAUk raineBeninIEIrelandMNMalawiUSUnited States of AmericaBeninIEIrelandMNMKMalawiUSUnited States of AmericaBrazilILIsraelMRMauritaniaUGUgandaBelarusISIcelandMWMalawiUSUnited States of AmericaCongoKEKryaystanNENigerYuYu StoksiaCongoKEKryaystanNONorwayZWZWCuba'KZSaint LuciaRORomaniaZWZimbabweCuba'KZSaint LuciaRORomaniaHurkinLU<		Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AustraliaGAGabonLVLatviaSZSwazilandAzerbäijanGBUnied KingdomMCMoñacoTDChadBosnia and HerzegovinaGEGeorgiaMDRepublic of MoldovaTGTogoBarbadosGHGhanaMCMadagascárTJTajikistanBelgiumGNGuineaMKMCMadagascárTJTajikistanBulgariaGRGréèceRepublic of MacedoniaTRTurkey.BulgariaHUHungaryMLMaliTTTrinidad and TobagoBerninIEIrélandMNMongoliaUAUkraineBrazilILIsraelMRMauritaniaUGUgandaBelarusISIcelandMWMalawiUSUnited States of AmericaCanadaITItalyMXMexicoUZUzbekistanCongoKEKenyaNLNetherlandsYUYugoslaviaSwitzerlandKGKyrgyzstanNONorwayZWZimbabweCubaKZKażakstanRORomaniaIICubaKZKażakstanRORomaniaIICubaLCSaint LuciaRURussian FederationICubaLCSaint LuciaRURussian FederationICubaLCSaint LuciaSUSudanICubaLLSvi LankaSESwedenI <td></td> <td>Austria</td> <td>FR</td> <td>France</td> <td>LU</td> <td>Luxembourg</td> <td>SN</td> <td>Senegal</td>		Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
ActionalGBOfficeModeModeModeToChadBosnia and HerzgovinaGEGeorgiaMDMadagascárTJTajikistanBarbadosGHGhanaMKThe former YugoslavTJTajikistanBelgiumGNGuineaMKThe former YugoslavTRTurkmenistanBurkina FasoGRGrečecRepublic of MacedoniaTRTurkoy.Burkina FasoGRGrečecRepublic of MacedoniaTTTrinidad and TobagoBeninIEIrciandMNMongoliaUAUkraineBrazilILIsraelMRMaliTTTrinidad and TobagoBelarusISIcelandMWMalawiUSUnited States of AmericaCanadaITItalyMXMexicoUZUzbekistanCongoKEKenyaNLNetherlandsYUYugoslaviaSwitzerlandKGKyrgyzstan'NONorwayZWZimbabweCaneroonRepublic of KoreaPLPolandICaneroonCubaKZKazakstanRORomaniaIICuchaKZKazakstanRORomaniaIICuchaLCSaint LuciaRURussian FederationGermanyLLLicetnensteinSDSudanIDenmarkLKSri LakaSESwedenI		Australia -	GA.	Gabon	NC 1	Laivia	52	Swaziland
BartadosGHGhanaMGMadagasárTJTajikistanBelgiumGNGuineaMKMadagasárTJTajikistanButkina FasoGRGréčeRepublic óf MacedoniaTRTurkmenistanBulgariaHUHungaryMLMalagisárTTTurkney.BulgariaIUHungaryMLMalagisárTTTurkney.BeninIEIrétandMNMongoliaUAUkraineBrazilILIsraelMRMauritaniaUGUgandaBelarusISIcelandMWMalawiUSUnited States of AmericaCanadaITItalyMXMexicoUZUzbekistanCongoKEKenyaNLNetentradasYUYugoslaviaSwitzerlandKGKyrgyztanNONorway.ZWZimbabweCôte d'IvoireKPDemocratic People'sNZNew ZealandZWZimbabweCubaKZKazakstanRORomaniaKZKazakstanKORomaniaCubaKZKazakstanRORomaniaSudanJureJureCubaLCSaint LuciaRURussian FederationJureJureCubaLCSaint LuciaSESudanJureJureCubaLLSti LakaSESwidanJureJureCubaLLSti LakaSESwidanJureJureCuba <td></td> <td>Cornia and Herregovina</td> <td>CF .</td> <td>Georgia</td> <td>MD</td> <td>Republic of Moldova</td> <td>TG</td> <td>Tore</td>		Cornia and Herregovina	CF .	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Tore
DecisionGraduationGraduationHorizonHorizonHorizonBelgiumGNGuineaMKThe former YugoslavTMTurkmenistanBurkina FasoGRGreëceRepublic of MacedoniaTRTurkmenistanBurkina FasoHUHungaryMLMaliTTTrinidad and TobagoBeninTEIrefandMNMongoliaUAUkraineBrazilILIsraelMRMauritaniaUGUgandaBelarusISIcelandMWMalawiUSUnited States of AmericaCanadaITItalyMXMexicoUZUzbekistanCongoKEKenyaNLNetherlandsYUYugoslaviaSwitzerlandKGKyryzstan'NONorwayZWZimbabweCôte d'IvoireKPDemocratic People'sNZNew ZealandZWZimbabweCubaKZKzzikatianRORomaniaKZKzzikatianRORomaniaCzech RepublicLCSaint LuciaRURussian FederationGuidaInterestionGermanyLILiechensteinSDSudanSudanSudan	- ÷	Barbadoe	CH -	Ghana	MG	Madagascat	TI .	Talikistan
Burkina FasoGRGreeceRepublic of MacedoniaTRTurkey.BulgariaHUHungaryMLMaliTTTrinidad and TobagoBeninIEIrelandMNMongoliaUAUkraineBrazilILIsraelMRMalawiUSUnited States of AmericaBelarusISIcelandMWMalawiUSUnited States of AmericaCanadaITItalyMKMexicoUZUzbekistanCongoKEKenyaNENigerVNViet NamCongoKEKenyaNLNetherlandsYUYugoslaviaSwitzerlandKGKyrgyzstanNONorwayZWZimbabweCateroonRepublic of KoreaPLPolandIICubaKZKzazkstanRORomaniaICubaLCSaint LuciaRURussian FederationGermanyLILicetnensteinSDSudanDenmarkLKSri LakaSESweden	÷	Belgium	GN	Guinea	мк	The former Yugoslav	тм	Turkmenistan
Bulgaria HU, Hungary ML Mali TT Trinidad and Tobago Benin IE Ireland MN Mongolia UA Ukraine Brazil IL Israel MR Mauritania UG Uganda Belarus IS Icoland MW Malawi US United States of America Canada IT Italy MX Mexico UZ Uzbekistan Central African Republic JP Japan NE Niger YU Yugoslavia Switzerland KG Kryzyzstan NO Norway ZW Zimbabwe Côte d'Ivoire KP Democratic People's NZ New Zealand ZW Zimbabwe China KR Republic of Korea PL Poland ZW Zimbabwe Cuba KZ Kazakstan RO Romania ZW Zimbabwe Cuba KZ Kazakstan RO Romania ZW Zimbabwe Cuba LC Saint Lucia RU Russian Federation ZW Zimbabwe Demmark LK Sri Lanka SE Swidan Swidan	- 1	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	····· ,·	Republic of Macedonia	TR	Turkey
Benin IE Iréland MN Mongolia UA Ukraine Brazil IL Israel MR Mauritania UG Uganda Belarus IS Iceland MW Malawi US United States of America Canada IT Italy MX Mexico UZ Uzbekistan Contral African Republic JP Japan NE Niger VN Viet Nam Congo KE Kenya NL Neterlands YU Yugoslavia Switzerland KG Kyrgyzitan NO Norway ZW Zimbabwe Côte d'Ivoire KP Democratic People's NZ New Zealand Image: State	Ē	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	ML.	Mali	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
Brazil IL Israel MR Mauritania UG Uganda Belarus IS Iceland MW Malawi US United States of America Canada IT Italy MX Mexico UZ Uzbekistan Central African Republic JP Japan NE Niger VN Viet Nam Congo KE Kenya NL Netherlands YU Yugoslavia Switzerland KG Kyrgyzstan NO Norway ZW Zimbabwe Côte d'Ivoire KP Democratic People's NZ New Zealand ZW Zimbabwe China, KR Republic of Korea PL Poland Interview Ferrore Cuba KZ Kzäzikstan RO Romania Ferrore Ferrore Czech Republic LC Saint Lucia RU Russian Federation Ferrore Germany LI Licentenstein SD Sudan Ferrore Denmark LK Sri Lanka SE Sweden Ferrore	Ē	Benin	IE	Ireland	MŇ	Mongolia	UA	Ukraine
Belarus IS Iceland MW Malawi US United States of America Canada IT Italy MX Mexico UZ Uzbekistan Central African Republic JP Japan NE Niger VN Viet Nam Congo KE Kenya NL Netherlands YU Yugoslavia Switzerland KG Kyrgyzstan NO Norway ZW: Zimbabwe Côte d'Ivoire KP Democratic People's NZ New Zealand Caneroon Republic of Korea PL Poland China KR Republic of Korea PT Portugal Cuba KZ Kazakstan RO Romania Czech Republic LC Saint Lucia RU Russian Federation Germany LI Liechtenstein SD Sudan Demmark LK Sri Lanka SE Sweden	E	Brazil	IL	Israel	MR	Mauritania	UG	Uganda
CanadaITItalyMXMexicoUZUZbekistanCentral African RepublicJPJapanNENigerVitVit NamCongoKEKenyaNLNetherlandsYUYugoslaviaSwitzerlandKGKyrgyzstanNONorwayZWZimbabweCôte d'IvoireKPDemocratic People'sNZNew ZealandCameroonRepublic of KoreaPLPolandChina,KRRepublic of KoreaPTPortugalCubaKZKözakstanRORomaniaCzech RepublicLCSaint LuciaRURussian FederationGermanyLILiechtensteinSDSudanDenmarkLKSri LankaSESweden	E	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MW	Malawi	US	United States of America
Central African Republic JP Japan NE Niger VN Viet Nam Congo KE Kenya NL Netherlands YU Yugoslavia Switzerland KG Kyrgyzstan NO Norway ZW Zimbabwe Côte d'Ivoire KP Democratic People's NZ New Zealand ZW Zimbabwe Cameroon Republic of Korea PL Poland Image: Construct Structure Poland Image: Constructure	Ċ	Canada	IT	Italy	MX	Mexico	UZ	Uzbekistan
Congo KE Kenya NL Netherlands YU Yugoslavia Switzerland KG Kyrgyzstan' NO Norway IZW: Zimbabwe Côte d'Ivoire KP Democratic People's NZ New Zealand Cameroon Republic of Korea PL Poland China, KR Republic of Korea PL Poland Cuba KZ Kszärkstan RO Romania Czech Republic LC Saint Lucia RU Russian Federation Germany LI LiceItenstein SD Sudan Demmark LK Sri Lanka SE Sweden	· · · c	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NE	Niger	VN	Viet Nam
Switzerland KG Kyrgyzstan NO Norway ZW: Zimbabwe Côte d'Ivoire KP Democratic People's NZ New Zealand Zumbabwe Zumbabwe Cameroon Republic of Korea PL Poland Poland Zumbabwe China KR Republic of Korea PT Portugal Cuba KZ Kazakstan RO Romania Czech Republic LC Saint Lucia RU Russian Federation Germany LI Liechtenstein SD Sudan Demmark LK Sri Lanka SE Sweden	0	Congo	KE	Kenya	NL	Netherlands	YU	Yugoslavia
Côte d'Ivoire KP Democratic People's NZ New Zealand Cameroon Republic of Korea PL Poland China, KR Republic of Korea PT Portugal Cuba KZ Käziakstan RO Romania Czech Republic LC Saint Lucia RU Russian Federation Germany LI LiceIntenstein SD Sudan Denmark LK Sri Lanka SE Sweden	5	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NO	Norway	ZW :	Zimbabwe
Cameroon Republic of Korea PL Poland China KR Republic of Korea PT Portugal Cuba KZ Kazakstan RO Romania Czech Republic LC Saint Lucia RU Russian Federation Germany LI Liechtenstein SD Sudan Denmark LK Sri Lanka SE Sweden	. (Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's	NZ	New Zealand		
China, KR Republic of Korea PT Portugal Cuba KZ Kazakstan RO Romania Czech Republic LC Saint Lucia RU Russian Federation Germany LI Liechtenstein SD Sudan Denmark LK Sri Lanka SE Sweden	10	Cameroon	- 9 H	Republic of Korea	PL '	Poland	· .	1
Cuba KZ Kázakstan RO Romania Czech Republic LC Saint Lucia RU Russian Federation Germany LI Liechtenstein SD Sudan Denmark LK Sri Lanka SE Sweden		China	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
Czech Republic LC Saint Lucia RU Russian Federation Germany LI Liechtenstein SD Sudan Denmark LK Sri Lanka SE Sweden	· · · •	Cuba	KZ ¹	Kazakstan	RO.	Romania	• • •	1
Germany LI Liechtenstein SD Sudan Denmark LK Sri Lanka SE Sweden		Czech Republic	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
Denmark LK Sri Lanka SE Sweden		Jermany	LI	Liechtenstein	SD 2 4.	Sudan	· · · ·	1
	I	Denmark	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		

27,285

.....

1.

٦.

< 2

5

10

15

20

25

· . 5

30

35

PORTABLE SATELLITE PHONE FOR COMMUNICATION WITH DIRECT LINK TO SATELLITE

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Field of the Invention

This invention relates to communications using a satellite network.

Background of the Invention

Currently, mobile communication terminals such as cellular phones wirelessly communicate with base stations which in turn may connect a call to geographically distant However, when cellular locations through satellites. base station, a distant from а too phones are communication path cannot be completed between the cellular phone and the base station leaving a caller undesirably stranded without ability to communicate.

Conventional cellular phones cannot communicate directly with satellites when too distant from the base stations partially because the power required to reach a satellite is beyond the capability of a cellular phone. In addition, if sufficient power is available, the electromagnetic energy output from the cellular phone antenna may be harmful to the user of the cellular phone as well as 'to' others' who are and as a for the cellular phone cellular phone as a decomplete and as a for a star phone phone and the same and as a star of the cellular phone cellular phone and a star of the cellular phone as well as 'to' others' who are and as a for star phone and a star of the cellular phone as a star of the cellular phone as a star of the cellular phone as the star of the cellular phone as a sta

SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

This invention provides a portable satellite phone that communicates with satellites diffectly. The portable satellite phone may form a highly diffected beam toward a satellite and adaptively maintains a beam to track the satellite as the portable satellite phone and/or the satellite moves relative to each other.

May link a portable satellite phone with either another portable satellite phone or a ground based communication system connected to conventional telephone stations. When a user of a portable satellite phone dials a number

WO 98/29968

15

20

30

35

corresponding to another portable satellite phone, the satellites of a satellite metwork identifies a destination an satellite withat can reach the called party's portable satellite phone.

2

5 The called party's portable, satellite phone . Fremains in a standby mode and receives an alert signal from the destination satellite indicating that a call is pending. The called party's portable satellite phone alerts the called party and if the called party answers the call; with end called, party's wportable satellite phone 10 directs an antenna beam toward the destination satellite to complete the communication path between the calling and called parties. The the Western will do not be

The portable satellite phone forms a directed antenna beam toward a satellite by determining the positions of the satellite and a position/bearing/attitude resolof the portable, satellite phone. The portable satellite phone includes a steering information detector that may include a gyrocompass, a plumb line, an attitude sensor and Global Positioning System (GPS) signal receiver. The sawi portable satellite phone also includes a database that contains information of the positions of all potential communication a satellites and a schedule of appearance within a range of the portable satellite phone. An antenna 25 controller of receives coinformation of from the steering. information detector and the information from the database to determine the direction of the directed antenna beam. . +: 1

> The portable satellite phone also includes а proximity detector that detects objects that may interfere with an antenna beam formed by the portable satellite phone. The proximity detector may include infrared sensors, sonar detectors, motion detectors and optical devices to determine range and bearing of objects that may interfere with the antenna beam. . If ... an object is detected within a predetermined distance of the antenna beam, the antenna controller may alternatively reshape the

.

WO 98/29968

ې ۹

×.

2

Ş

antenna beam to avoid the object, redirect the antenna
beam to a different satellite to avoid the object, or
reduce the power output of the antenna beam to prevent
harming the object. Also, the antenna controller may
5 activate an alarminto warn the user of the portable
satellite phone and/off the object of the potential
interference of the antenna beam and possible harm from
the electro-magnetic energy transmitted by the directed
a second the second of the strange of so the strand
10 BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF THE DRAWINGS
The invention is described win detail with
reference to the following drawings; wherein like numerals
represent like elements and wherein:
Fig. 1 bis a diagram of a communication system
15 . using direct satellite links; a two well each drucker of the
Fig. 2 is a diagram of a portable satellite phone
communicating ofvia satellite with a ground based
communication system; of a provide to abbe set of the
Fig. 3 is a diagram of a portable satellite phone
20 communicating with another portable sate lite phone:
Figs 24AH4D shows a fan beam tand the: Lang beam
cross-sections; contained to the formation and the contained at the contained of the contai
Figle 5 is a diagram showing possible communication
is usatellites; a distance of some second some restable restablished
25 Fig. 6 is a block diagram vore a portable satellite the
phone unit; Doude line and the second second second second second
the fight of the second s
information detector;
a diagram of a polyable satellite
30 phone having a folded planate phased array directional
antenna; a second se
The second second of the next of state the protocol bits where of Fig.
the instant may be dused in the portable saterifies prove of fig.
(8A;) Fig. 8C snows an relationship of a Shield to the
35. He diffolded planar antenna phased allay of fragt oby
an an an an an an an ann an an an an an

ç 3

WO 98/29968

101 and for Fig. 9A shows deeportable satellite (phone having a volumetric phase array directional antenna; Fig. 9B shows that cylindrical volumetric phased array antenna that may be used with the portable satellite 5 phone shown in Fig. 9A; a contraction of the Fig. 10 shows a diagram of a portable satellite phone having a hat phased array antenna; Sec. Car Fig. 11 is a block diagram of sensors for a proximity detector; 10 Fig. 12 is a block diagram of an alarm device; controller of the portable satellite phone shown in Fig. 5: no set to to the wheel of the regeneration of the set here Fig. 14 shows a flowchart for a communication process using portable satellite phones; a set of the 15 Fig. 15 shows a portable satellite phone changing communication paths between two satellites by snapping the a grantenna beam from one satellite to another satellite; Fig. 16 shows a portable satellite phone changing 20 communication paths from one satellite to another size satellite by forming a bridging beam; and independent Fig. 17 mshows a process of the portable satellite phone forming and adaptively maintaining an antenna beam 25 fig. 18 shows wa portable. satellite phone process a for responding to objects that interfere with a beam path hof the portable satellite phone; and then a . . 5 F 🔪 🔭 🤊 Fig. 19 (is a diagram of a communication system. that includes phased array antennas that are mounted on 30 Fixed structures. The base of the second structures and the second structures and the second structures and the second structures and the second structures are second structures and the second structures are second st DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERRED EMBODIMENTS 111 Figure 1 shows a communication system that

includes portable satellite phones 102 and 104 i communicating with a satellite network 100. The portable satellite phones 102 and 104 form antenna beams 106 and 108 that are directed toward satellites of the satellite

5

network 100. The portable satellite phones 102 and 104 receive Global Positioning System (GPS) signals 110 through GPS receivers included in the portable satellite phones 102 and 104 Phone Satellites of Southe Statellite network 100 may communicate with calling and called parties directly through the portable satellite phones or through a ground based communication network 200 to complete a communication path. Whether a called party is reached through either the portable satellite phone 102 or 104 or the ground based communication network 200 is determined by known methods such as specially assigned numbers: If a conventional telephone number is used, the ground based communication network 200 may connect to terminal 202 (which may be a telephone station or other devices such as a facsimile device) or to mobile units 204 such as cellular phones to reach the called party. ·**2:

contract: When a !calling/party=uses/the portable.satellite phone 102 and calls a called party by dialing a conventional telephone number, the portable satellite phone 102 selects a satellite of the satellite metwork 100 f and forms an antenna beam directed to the selected - Consatelluite, Caseshown in Fig. 2000 The Selected satellife either directly corsethrough wothers sate lites of the satellite network 100 links! tore: the ground ' based 25 communication network 200; by wwell income methods and completes the communication path chevween the portable satellite phone 102 and a stelephon distation such as set is terminal 202 of the called party that is foupled to the ground based communication network 200.

When the calling party dials a sumber assigned to the portable " satellite phone / 104, for / example, the portable satellite phone 104 is alerted of the call by a - I destination satellite of the satellite network 100, as · : : shown? in Fig. 03.0. The destination satellite, and the 35 ... e.selected satellites may be sthell same satellite if the portable satellite phone 104 is reachable by the selected

1.0

5

15

20

30

ŗ,

 \mathcal{L}'

5

WO 98/29968

satellites.outherwise, the selected satellite must link to style destination (satellite).(perhaps othrough yet other constatellites); to complete the communication path to the constallites portable satellite phone 104.4 Normally,

6

5 . the portable satellite phone 104 is placed in a standby mode and may receive alert signals from satellites serving , the geographical area where the portable satellite phone 104 is located. When the portable satellite phone 104 detects an alert signal from the destination satellite, the portable satellite phone 104 alerts the called party 10 that an incoming call is received ... When the called party activates the portable satellite phone 104 by turning it on, the portable satellite phone 104 forms an antenna beam directed at the destination satellite and establishes a 15 connection to complete the call. and the second
The portable satellite phones 102 and -1 i -104 communicate (with a satellites directly by forming highly · · . ! directed antenna beams directed at a specific satellite. In this way, the amount of power required to communicate 20 with a satellite is reduced. (In Maddition, Decause the and electromagnetic energy is concentrated in a narrow antenna beam, the area affected by the electromagnetic energy is equivareduced; thus reducing the possibility of harmful effects East to persons that may be in the neighborhood of the portable 25 of a satellitesphone. The distributes as a distribute at 11 A.S. The portable satellite phones 102 and 104 must accurately determine their individual position/bearingattitude and the position of the selected or destination 1.1satellite to afform it the antenna beam. It The portable 30 🧭 satellite phones 102 and 104 determine their own positions (latitude and longitude) by sensing GPS signals 110 . 1 , transmitted by either GPS satellites or satellites of the satellite network 100. As well as the set of The portable satellite phones 102 and 104 include

35 a database of satellite positions and a schedule of when a specific satellite may be within the range of the portable

WO 98/29968 ()."

10 .

15

20

25

• • •

satellite phones 102 and 104. The portable satellite phones 102 and 104 include leclocks southat accurate satellite positions may be determined at any time. Thus, the portable satellite phones 102 and 104 may be able to determine the positions of possible satellites that can provide) the desired communications links. Also, alternatively, satellites may transmit a tracking signal or specific position information to assist the portable . satellite phones 102 and 104 to locate a satellite's exact poposition. A contract with a main which a contract on the

In addition to their position, the portable satellité (phones), 102 (fanda 1040) determine a béaring (direction such as North, South; East. or West) and attitude (direction relative to vertical) of the portable 102 and 104 Based on the satellite phones positions/bearings/attitudes of the portable satellite the phones 102 and 104 and the positions of the satellites, the portable satellite phones 102 and 104 determine the exact relative position between the portable satellite phones 102 and 104 and the selected/destination satellite so that an antenna beam may be formed directed at the redesired sateblite. At a to vertex being some out class

control the For cless (lexpensive) versions doff the portable statellite phones: 102: and: 104, thearing candel attitude detection could be omitted. For these simpler portable satellite phones 102, and 104, the opertable satellite 1 1 16 phones 102 and 104 must be positioned to that any antenna beam may be directed to a satellite for communication. In particular, the portable satellite phones 102 and 104 may 30 \sim j be maintained in an erect or vertical position and need be \ll orientated approximately in a proper bearing to allow the · · . portable satellite phones 102 and 104 to form an antenna beam toward a satellite, for example.

For this simple case, based on the geographical 35 provide position of the portable satellite phones 102 and 104 d determined from the GPS position coordinates, the portable

WO 98/29968

35

satellite phones 102 and 104 may indicate to the user which bearing to orientated the portable satellite phones 102 and 104. For example the portable satellite phones 102 and 104 may have four LEDs to indicate North, South, East and West or even finer even more precise indications. 5 i For the above lower cost embodiment, the portable satellite phones 102 and 104 may form a fan beam 120 having generally rectangular or elliptical cross-sections, as shown in Figs. 4A-4D using portable satellite phone 102 is an example. The fan beam is directed at an elevation 10 angle determined by the GPS coordinates of the portable satellite phone's 102 and 104 and the satellite position and has a fan angle that provides a large relative bearing range between whe satellite, and the portable satellite 15 . phones 102 and 104. The fan angle may be any value limited only by the user's body (head) so that physical harm from exposure to the fan beam is avoided. A fan angle range of about 60 to 120 degrees would be preferred. Thus, the fan 1 No. F beam 120 permits the portable satellite phones 102 and 104 to communicate with a satellite without depending on exact 20 bearing and attitude information (and a set) and a When the above low cost embodiment is turned on "and the fam beam reaches a satellite, a dial tone is 21.1 generated to indicate to the user that a communication 25 and path is established. "Howevery if a sate lite cannot be e * . reached, a dial tone is not generated. The user may reorientate the portable satellite phone: 110.5 and 104 in a different bearing until the communication path is established and a dial tone is generated. 30 The portable satellite phones 102 and 104 are provided with proximity detectors. When an object, such as a person, comes within a predetermined distance of the antenna beam and/or the portable satellite phones 102 and

104, the portable satellite phones 102 and 104 may either reshape for redirect the antenna beam to avoid the object

and a three of the provide states and the provide second

ä ŝ

2

ŝ

æ

ś.

#

3

÷

WO 98/29968

5

10

15

or reduce the transmitted power of the antenna beam to avoid causing harm to the object a provide the t 1. . . .

In addition, the portable satellite phones 102 and 104 may also activate angalarm to warn the object or the user of the portable satellite phones 102 and 104 to avoid the antenna beam, "When a user of the portable satellite phone 102, for example, moves the portable satellite phone 102 in an orientation where the antenna beam is blocked by the user or objects that cannot be moved, the portable - satellite phone 102; may use the alarm to request the user to reorientate the portable satellite phone 102 so that an antenna beam may be, properly directed away from the interfering object and toward the desired satellite.

Figure 5 shows possible communication satellites that may be a part of the satellite network 100. geostationary earth orbit; (GEO) satellite 304; is a satellite that is placed in an orbit so that the satellite maintains a fixed position relatives to the surface of the earth 300. A medium, altitude earth orbit. (MEO) and low 20 altitude earth orbit (LEO) satellites 306 and 308 are or satellites that may be in motion relative to the surface of the earth of These satellites are closer, to the surface of the earth, 300 as compared to the GEO, satellite 304.

Because of the shorter distance to the surface of the earth 300, less power is required to establish 25 . . communication using the MEO and LEO's, however, the portable satellite phones 102 and 104 must account for the changing positions of the satellites and occasionally transition from a first satellite toma second satellite 30 ... when the first satellite position moves out of range of y the portable satellite phones 102, and 104

A highly elliptical orbit (HEO) satellite 310 forms an elliptical orbit around the earth 300 as comparedto the approximately circular orbit formed by the other 35 A Satellites. of A GEOThelio synchronous orbit (BradCo) satellite 311 is positioned in an orbit around the sun 302.

WO 98/29968

10

10

1.5

and maintains a fixed position relative to the earth 300. An intermediate circular orbit (ICO) satellite 312 is positioned in a circular orbit around the earth 300 at an altitude in between the MEO and LEO 306 and 308 and the GEO 304 satellites. All of the above satellites 304-314 may be utilized to form the satellite network 100.

Figure 6 shows a block diagram of the portable satellite phone 102. The portable satellite phone 102 includes an antennal controller 400 connected to a directional antenna 402. A steering information detector 404, a proximity detector 406, an alarm device 408 and other portable satellite phone detector 410 are all coupled to the antenna controller 400.

1.59 When the antenna controller 400 receives an instruction from the other portable satellite phone 15 elements 410 to establish communication with the satellite i intwork 100% the antenna controller 400 selects a satellite of the satellite network 100 and determines a position of the satellite by consulting the database 20 contained in the portable satellite phone 102. The antenna controller 400 may also select a satellite by scanning for available satellites within reachable range. A set of preassigned communication channels may be assigned for satellites to broadcast their positions and availability 25 information? Satellites newly added to the satellite inetwork may use these channels to announce their availability especially to portable satellite phones 102 having older databases. The antenna controller 400 also determines the position/bearing/attitude of the portable 30 11 1 satellite phone 102 via the steering information detector 404. Based on the position of the selected satellite and the position/bearing/attitude of the portable satellite phone 102, the antenna controller forms an antenna beam that is directed toward the selected satellite using the 35 17 directional antenna 402 to establish a communication path to the selected satellite.

WO 98/29968

11

During call setup and after the communication path with the selected satellite is a possible of the antenna controller monitors for beam blockage by objects such as a person using, the proximity detector 406. Buy When the proximity detector 406 may detects a person, within a predetermined distance from the communication path; the antenna controller 400 may take one of several alternative actions to avoid harming the person that may be caused by the electromagnetic energy transmitted by the directional

, antenna 402. In part of A. 201 sub-the indext is The mantenna controller, 400 may reduces the power level transmitted by the directional antenna 402 to avoid harming the person. If the power level is reduced below a level required of for communication of with of the selected satellite, the antenna controller 400 alerts the user of the portable satellite phone 102 through the alarm devices 408.... (The antenna controller 400 alerts the user of whether the antenna beam may be reshaped, so as to avoid harming the person or whether another satellite may be selected to avoid harming the person. an

For example, a circular crossmection antenna beam pattern may be modified into an asymmetric cross-section to reduce the received (power level at the person while maintaining the power density in the satellite direction.
25 The actual antenna beam patterns, necessary, to satisfy these conditions will vary, depending on the angular separation between the satellite and the intercepting person, as well as the person's distance from the phone's antenna.

30 Example Figure 7 is a block diagram of the position a detector 404. The steering information detector 404 includes an attitude sensor 900, a GPS receiver 904 for receiving GPS signals and a gyrocompass 906. The above components are coupled together via a signal bus 908. The attitude, sensor 900 determines the portable satellite phone 102's orientation relative to vertical or "plum"

10

5

15

Þ

WO 98/29968

5

12

Line"..., The GPS receiver 904 receives GPS signals generated by the Global Positioning System indicating the position of the portable satellite phone 102. The gyrocompass 906 determines the azimuth and bearing of the portable satellite phone 102. The steering information detector 404, is coupled to the antenna controller 400 through the signal bus 908.

The directional antenna 402 may. be anv electronically steerable antenna., A class of phased array antennas is preferred. In general, a phased array of 10 independent antenna, elements may be configured in a linear, planar or volumetric array. Such an antenna may be electronically directed or steered by controlling the · • amplitude and phase of signals applied to each of the 15 antenna, elements. For example, an antenna beam of a planar array of uniformly spaced antenna elements can be steered in angular space by applying a signal to each of the antenna elements having a fixed time shift relative to the antenna elements. The shape of the antenna beam may be controlled by applying signals to each of the antenna 20 . elements having varying amplitudes relative to the other ic, antenna elements frhe amplitude of the signals applied to each antenna element may be weighted by multiplying by a ; respective weight galue... An antenna beam pattern may be 25 broadened or elongated by reducing or eliminating (weight equals 0), elements, along an axis of the planar array.

Figure 8A shows a folded planar phased array antenna 602 disposed on the back and top sides 604 and 606 of a portable satellite phone 600. Figure 8B shows the folded planar phased array antenna 602 having antenna elements 608 uniformly disposed on the back side 604 and antenna elements 610 uniformly disposed on the top side 606 of the folded planar phased array antenna 602. The back and top sides 604 and 606 of the folded planar phased array antenna 602 act as a single planar array when the top antenna elements 610 are phase shifted by 90 degrees

WO 98/29968

11 13

"(in the plane perpendicular to the back and top sides 604 and 606) relative to those on the back side 604. The folded planar phased array antenna 602 has slightly better directionality than a planar array. The set of the Meridian Meridian

H ... Figure 8A shows a shield 609 that shields a user from the electromagnetic energy transmitted by the folded planer phased array antenna 602. As Shown in Figure 8A, the shield 609 is disposed between the folded planar array antenna 602 and an ear piece so that the user is shielded from the electromagnetic energy especially when the antenna phone 602 is positioned next to the user's head. The shield may include any metallic material and may be electrically grounded with respect to the folded planar

array antenna 602:30 complete 15 estate file 1. 1. 1 The antenna gain and antenna directionality are proportional to a number of elements in the phased array antenna. TAt Ka band frequencies of 17430 and 40 Ghz, the

wavelength approaches 1.0 cm. A conformal antenna with guarter wavelength element spacings would occupy approximately 5 x 5 cm which can accommodate a 20 x 20 04 element array at these of requencie's . At folded planar phased array located on the top and back sides 606 and 604 of the folded phased array antenna 0002 may provide 20 x 8 elements on the top side 606 (~2 x1 59 cm) and 20 x 20 25 We welements on the back side 604 (#57 xr 5 cm) to be being of

Figures 9A and 9B show another embodiment of a 10 T 1 portable satellite phone 700 having a volumetric phased Farray antennas 702. As shown in Fig. 9B, the phased array , 1i antenna 702 includes a cylindrical antenna body 704 having 4467 30 disposed on the surface of a the cylindrical body 704. and the set 化合金 医电子神经术

Figure 10 shows an antenna phone 650 having a hat phased array antenna 652. The hat phased array antenna 652 is a volumetric phased array antenna where the space 35 enclosed by the sides of the hat phased array antenna 652 " is filled with antenna elements (not shown) : The front

10

15 '

5

WO 98/29968

5

10

surface:662 is a metallic; shield, for example. The shield 662 may be disposed between: the antenna array elements 670 and, a user's head and (may) be applanar metallic shield and embedded in the portable satellite phone 650.

14

For higher end Ka band frequencies and assuming a quarter wavelength spacing, the maximum number of antenna elements 670 and 706 for volumetric antennas 652 and 702, respectively, is approximately 64 times the cubic volume (in units of cm³) of the antennas 652 and 702. The hat phased array antenna 652 on the top of the antenna phone 650 may have with a volume of roughly (2 x 25 cm or 20 cm³) and may have over 1000 antenna elements 670

Antenna array selection may depend on: (1) high frequency electronics required for electronic steering; 2) 15 delectromagnetic properties of the entenna; and 3) delectric and shielding structure endideally the spatial diversity of an volumetric array and a largest number of the antenna elements 670 and 706 is emost desirable. An antenna earray withe the largest gain and best 20 see directionality may be the most preferred.

see burned Eigure 11 shows a block diagram of the proximity Jifidetector 406 may include an infrared device 910, an optical device 912, a sonar device 914 and a motion detector 916. The above components are 25 ______coupled_via_bus v918 .which dalso couples the proximity , detector to the antenna controller 400. The function of the proximity detector 406 is to determine a distance of ; the object from the portable satellite phone 102 along the communication path formed by the directional antenna 402 30 ... that may interrupt the communication path or be harmed by electromagnetic, energy transmitted by the directional , antenna 402. In addition, a distance of the object from the communication path may also be determined. These distances together, with a known antenna pattern of the 35 antenna beam formed by the directional antenna 402 may be used to reduce the transmission power of the directed

physical harm to the objectness to the set of the prevent

The infrared devices:910 detects the presence of a human being by sensing an increase in the infrared menergy relative to the background. The infrared device 910 is useful for detecting the presence of a person in a target area such as as neighborhood of the communication path formed by the antenna beam. The motion detector 916 detects the presence of a object formed by detecting a motion of the object. Similar devices common in home security systems use a plurality of infrared detectors or use sonic beam echoes to indicate the presence of a moving to object.

The sonar device 914 may determine a distance and bearing of the object relative to the satellite antenna 102 and the antenna beam. Wither sonar device 914 may operate similarly to medical similaring devices or sonic tape=measuring devices commonly as used find the sonar device 914 and the round trip delay of the sonic pulse reflected in from the object may be used tow determine the distance and bearing of the object) relative to the portable satellite sophone 102. The object here is all the object state

25 determining and bearing. Two lens systems and bearing. Two lens systems may be a provided to determine a focal distance to the object based on the parallax of the two lens systems. Optical parallax is commonly used in cameras for auto focusing! Parallax inherent in two lens systems are adjusted until the object
30 with distance to the object, this method may be applied to the proximity indetection problem on the portable satellite phone 102 to directly measure a distance to the object. After dark, anatural light may be suplemented
35 with periodic flashes of light to appreciately check for distance to the object. The suplemented

20

15

5

í

WO 98/29968

web lobjects and determined their distance from the Cantenna who obeam, the Cantenna who obeam, the content of the subject of the second secon

406 dis a combination of the proximity detector
406 dis a combination of the optical device 912 that
provides accurate ranging and the sonar device 914 that
may provide general detection of the presence of an object
as well as distance and bearing information.

Figure 12 shows a block diagram of the alarm device 408. The alarm device includes a visual alarm device 920, an audio dalarm device 922 and an external alarm interface 924. The above components are coupled to a signal bus 926 which balso couples sto the cantenna controller 400 second of the states of the states at

The visual alarm device may include lights such as LEDs mounted on the portable satellite phone 102. The lights may be configured so that the lighting of a particular LED indicates a warning of possible physical harm while the lighting of another LED may indicate an "inoperative condition. In addition, the LED may be placed 20 do the portable satellite phone 102 to indicate to the user(a suggested posture change to change the position of the portable satellite phone 102.

31. Induct with audio-alarm (device: 922) may (generate audio of 10) alarm signal's directly (into the receiver of the portable satellite phone 102 instructing the user to either change the position of the portable satellite phone 102 or informing the user that an object is about to interfere with the antenna beam and cause a loss of communication with the satellite. The audio alarm device 922 may also include an audible alarm separate from the alarm generated in the receiver of the portable satellite phone 102. Such an audible alarm may alert a person (for example, the object) other than the user of the possible exposure to unacceptable levels of electromagnetic energy.

35 The data device 408 also includes an external alarm interface 924 that may be coupled to other alarm

WO 98/29968

5

10

15

20

17

devices physically separate: from the portable satellite phone 102. The external alarm interface 924 may include an infrared link to other alarm devices that may either warn or physically prevent an object from entering into an area that may be physically harmful.

Figure 13 is a block diagram of the antenna controller, 400. The antenna controller 400 includes a processor 500, and a memory 502. The antenna controller 410 include interfaces to other components of the portable satellite phone 102. The interfaces, are as follows: 10. steering, information detector; interface 504, directional antenna interface 506, proximity detector interface 508, alarm device interface 510 and interface to other portable satellite phone elements 512 and All of the above components are coupled together, via a signal bus 514 Each of the interface components 504-512 contain the necessary devices , required to interface, with each respective device. For s_example, the directional antenna; interface 506 mincludes all the electronics necessary, to receive and transmit signals through the directional antenna as well as the ... necessary components required to oform antenna, beams in wa

satellite phone elements 512, the processor 500 responds by determining whether the user is a calling party or a called party. If the user is a calling party, the processor searches the database din the smemory 502 and selects an appropriate satellite of the satellite network

12 18

100 based on criteria such as cost, satellite position, etc. If the user ista called party, the processor 500 searches the database stord determine a position of the destination satellite. Alternatively, the processor 500 may value wreceive information: from the destination (satellite during a call set up process.

After a satellite position is determined, . ' the processor 500 interfaces with the steering information detector 404, through the steering information detector interface 504 to determine the position/bearing/attitude 10 of the portable satellite phone 102. When both the ۰. satellite position and the position/bearing/attitude of the portable satellite phone 102 are determined, the processor 500 sends appropriate control information to the 15 directional antenna 402 through the directional antenna interface 506 stoppedirect and antenna (beam) stoward the ۰. selected/destination satellite.

destination satellite is established, the processor 500 20 at adaptively maintains the cantenna beam directed to the durate selected/destination satellite(by, monitoring the satellite durate position case well as the position/bearing/attitude, of the selected/destination satellite(by, monitoring the satellite direction of the satellite phone 102 and adjusts the direction of additional satellite phone 102 and adjusts the direction of additional satellite phone 102 and adjusts the direction of additional satellite phone 102 and adjusts the direction of additional satellite phone 102 and adjusts the direction of additional satellite phone 102 and adjusts the direction of additional satellite phone 102 and adjusts the direction of additional satellite phone 102 and adjusts the direction of additional satellite phone 102 and adjusts the direction of additional satellite phone 102 and adjusts the direction of additional satellite phone 102 and adjusts the direction of additional satellite phone 102 and adjusts the direction of additional satellite phone 102 and adjusts the direction of additional satellite phone 102 and adjusts the direction of additional satellite phone 102 and adjusts the direction of additional satellite to assist the processor 500 and adjust addition satellite to assist the processor 500 in directing the antenna beam. Soft and the phone 102 and 100 addition of the satellite to addition the processor for the phone 102 and 100 addition for the phone 100 addition f

30 During the call setup process and for the duration of the communication with the satellite, the processor 500 "activates the proximity detector 406 to determine whether there are objects, such as people, within a predetermined distance from the antenna beam. When the proximity 35 detector detects an object, the processor 500 determines the distance and bearing of the object based on the

差

14

1

X

WO 98/29968

5

. . .

19

: 17

information, neceived from the proximity, detector 406. The processor 500 then takes alternative action such as redirecting the antennableam, stol another satellite for example, to prevent physical harm to the object, modify the antenna beam patternoto reduce aspower devel at the object while still communicating with the selected destination satellite, reduce the power transmitted by the directional antenna 402 and/or usending appropriate commands to the alarm device etco output a warning of 10 processible harm orcloss of communication. for each at

a shows a process of communication using the portable satellite phone do2. 13 In step S1000, a calling party dials a number using the portable satellite phone 102. When the calling party dials a number, the processor 500: of the portable satellite phone 102 receives 15 an instruction from the other portable satellite phone establish . communication with elements 410 to .⊹an appropriate satellite. Themathe aprocess goes to step \$1002. The set of a set of a local state of a set of a se 25

1) In step S1002, the processor 500 accesses the S 20 5 database stored in the memory 502 to determine which satellite of the satellite network 100 is most appropriate for the number dialed by the calling party. The satellite se selection may be based on criteria such as cost, position 25. . of the satellites, and the capability of the satellite and a the portable satellite phone 102 to establish a complete communication path from the portable satellite phone 102 1 1 to the called party. After the appropriate satellite is selected, the process goes to step S1004apped Merce a

position of the portable satellite phone 102 by accessing the information from the position detector 404; through the position detector, interface 504. After determining the position wof the portable satellite phone 102, the antenna beam and sends appropriate control information to